Westfield College Library

Author Forbes, N.

Class No. PG 2105

Accession No. 6048

d.d.S. Sect

Or. 925

WESTFIELD COLLEGE LIBRARY

WITHDRAWN
FROM STOCK
QMUL LIBRARY

E. M Def.
Oct: 1916

QM Library
23 1203394 5

DATE DUE FOR RETURN

13 NOV 2002
12 MAY 2004
28 SEP 2007

6048
207 48

RUSSIAN GRAMMAR

BY

NEVILL FORBES, M.A., PH.D.
READER IN RUSSIAN
IN THE UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD

OXFORD
AT THE CLARENDON PRESS
1914

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS
LONDON EDINBURGH GLASGOW NEW YORK
TORONTO MELBOURNE BOMBAY
HUMPHREY MILFORD M.A.
PUBLISHER TO THE UNIVERSITY

PREFACE

The accompanying volume is a practical rather than a scientific grammar. It is intended for the use of those students who are working under a teacher able to explain the difficulties of the language to them, and also for the use of those who are working at the language by themselves with the object of being able to read it; but it does not profess to be an adequate means of teaching any one working alone how to speak Russian.

As it is an elementary book, philological references and comparisons and etymological explanations have been avoided, in order not to discourage the beginner.

The most important points of the syntax that could be included in a book of this size have been mentioned, not in a part by themselves, but incorporated in the morphology.

I wish to thank Dr. Henry Bradley and Mr. Daniel Jones for the help which they have kindly given me with regard to one or two points of detail, particularly in those parts dealing with pronunciation. Syntactical examples have been gathered from the works of Pushkin, Gogol, Goncharov, and Garshin.

NEVILL FORBES.

Oxford, *June, 1914.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

A. Accented Texts.

Russian Reader. By Boyer and Speranski; adapted by S. N. Harper. Published by the University of Chicago Press, 1906. Agents: Cambridge University Press.

Russische Literatur. Vols. I and II, selections from Russian authors; edited, with notes in German, and accented, by Dr. Erich Boehme. Published in the Sammlung Göschen (vols. 403–4), Göschen'sche Verlagshandlung. Leipzig, 1908–9.

Russische Chrestomathie für Anfänger. By Dr. Oskar Ásbóth. Leipzig, F. A. Brockhaus, 1903.

Russische Meisterwerke mit Akzenten (accented texts of Russian masterpieces). By L. v. Marnitz. Published by Raimund Gerhard, 12 Lessingstrasse, Leipzig. (N.B. These are published in two editions, one containing the texts alone, the other containing texts and commentary; the texts of Turgenev in this edition must be used with care as they are not always correctly accented.)

Рýсскіе Писáтели (*Russian Authors*). An accented chrestomathy of Russian literature with explanatory notes in Russian. Two vols. By V. Martýnovski. Published by Y. Bashmakóv, St. Petersburg, 1908–10.

The following books are also accented:

Рýсское Эхо (*Russian Echo*). By Kavraiski. Published by Wilhelm Violet, Stuttgart.

Máленькій Рýсскій (*The Little Russian*). By O. Pirrss. Published by J. Bielefeld, Karlsruhe, Baden, 1905.

Родно́й Міръ (*Our Own World*). A book for the use of non-Russian children in Russian elementary schools. In three

parts. By И. Дависъ (Davis). Published by Зихманъ (Zikhman), Riga, 1908.

B. Dictionaries, etc.

Pocket Dictionary of the English and Russian Languages. By S. W. Linden and Dr. Th. Kawraisky. Published by Otto Holtze's Nachfolger, Leipzig, 1909.

Complete English-Russian and Complete Russian-English Dictionary. Two vols. By A. Alexandrow. Published by the General Staff Office, St. Petersburg, 1899-1904.

Толко́вый слова́рь Живо́го великору́сскаго языка́ (Explanatory Dictionary of the living Great Russian Language). By Dal. In four vols., 3rd edition, edited by Professor Baudouin de Courtenay. Published by Wolff, St. Petersburg, 1903–9.

Les racines de la langue russe. By Leger and Bardonnaut. Published by J. Maisonneuve, Paris, 1894.

Das russische Zeitwort (The Russian Verb). An alphabetical list of Russian verbs, giving their imperfective and perfective aspects, accented. By A. Garbell. Published separately as part of the Methode Toussaint-Langenscheidt. Langenscheidtsche Verlagsbuchhandlung, Berlin.

C. Grammars, etc.

Grammaire raisonnée de la langue russe. By Gretsch-Reiff-Leger. 4th edition. Published by Maisonneuve, Paris, 1878.

Morphologie des aspects du verbe russe. By A. Mazon. Published by Librairie Honoré Champion, Paris, 1908.

Emplois des aspects du verbe russe. By A. Mazon. Published by Librairie Honoré Champion, Paris, 1914.

L'accent tonique dans la langue russe. By Gaston Pérot. Published in Travaux et Mémoires de l'Université de Lille. Tome IX. Mémoire No. 26. Lille, 1900.

De l'accentuation du verbe russe. By Paul Boyer. (Centenaire de l'École des langues orientales vivantes. Recueil de mémoires publié par les professeurs de l'école.) Imprimerie Nationale, Paris, 1895.

Russische Grammatik, Russisches Lesebuch mit Glossar, Russisch-Deutsches Gesprächsbuch. All three by Professor Dr. Erich

Berneker, and published as vols. 66-8 in the Sammlung Göschen. Göschen'sche Verlagshandlung, Leipzig.

Die Lehre vom russischen Accent. By Dr. L. Kayssler. Berlin, 1866.

Ру́сская грамма́тика (*Russian Grammar*). By Vostókov. 12th edition. St. Petersburg, 1874.

Истори́ческая ру́сская грамма́тика (*Historical Russian Grammar*). By Busláyev. Two vols., 4th edition. Moscow, 1875.

Филологи́ческія разыска́нія (*Philological Researches*). By Grot. 4th edition. St. Petersburg, 1899.

Общій курсъ ру́сской грамма́тики. By V. A. Bogoróditsky. Published by the University Press, Kazan, 1904.

Курсъ грамма́тики ру́сскаго языка́. I: Фонетика. By V. A. Bogoróditsky. Warsaw, 1887.

CONTENTS

		PAGE
Bibliography		5
Russian Characters and Writing		12, 13
§ 1.	Orthography	15
	History of the Alphabet	15
§ 2.	The Alphabet	17
§ 3.	Pronunciation	19
§ 4.	Hard Vowels	19
	а	20
§ 5.	э	20
§ 6.	ы	21
§ 7.	о	21
§ 8.	у	21
§ 9.	ъ	22
§ 10.	Soft Vowels	
	я	23
§ 11.	е ѣ (ё)	23
§ 12.	и (й і v)	26
§ 13.	ю	28
§ 14.	ь	28
	The Consonants	
§ 15.	б	31
§ 16.	в	31
§ 17.	г	32
§ 18.	д	33
§ 19.	ж	34
§ 20.	з	34
§ 21.	к	35
§ 22.	л	35
§ 23.	м	36
§ 24.	н	36
§ 25.	п	37
§ 26.	р	37
§ 27.	с	38

PAGE

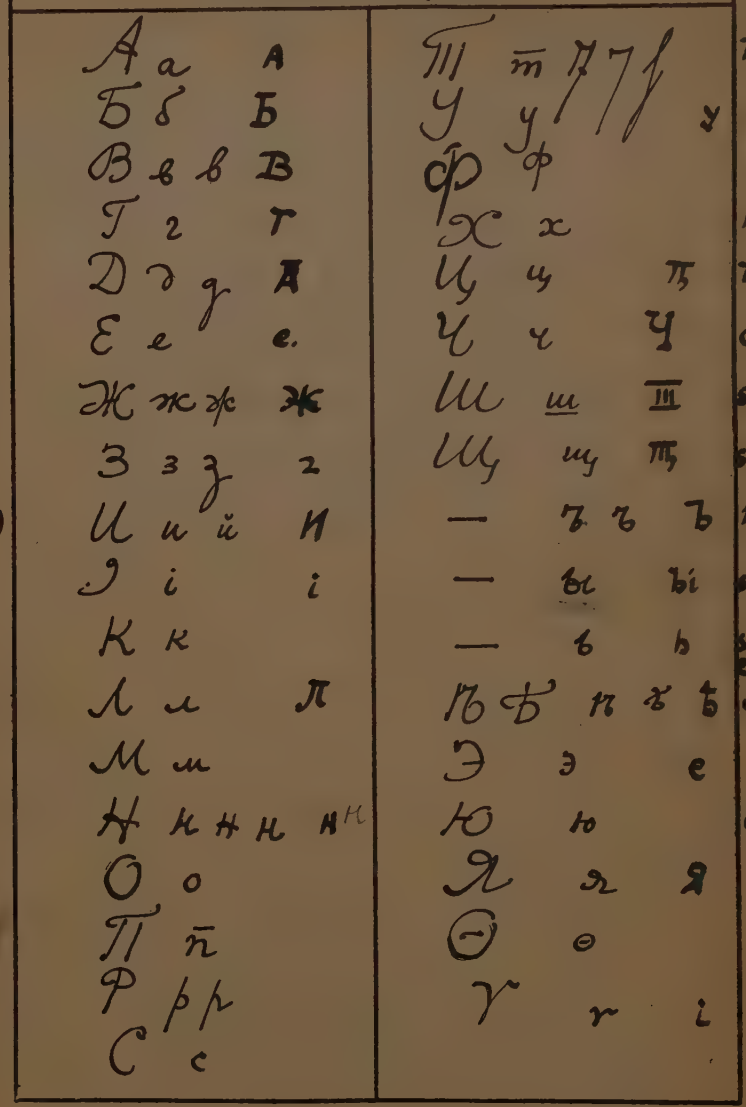
§ 28. т 38
§ 29. ф 39
§ 30. х 39
§ 31. ц 39
§ 32. ч 40
§ 33. ш 40
§ 34. щ 40
§ 35. о 41
§ 36. Phonetic transcription of sounds 41
§ 37. The Accent 43
§ 38. Declension of Substantives 44
§ 39. Masculine Nouns in -ъ, -ь, -й 45
§ 40. Feminine „ in -а, -я 49
§ 41. Neuter „ in -о, -е 51
§ 42. Feminine „ in -ь 53
§ 43. Neuter „ in -я 54
§ 44. Note on terminations of Substantives 55
§ 45. Diminutives 56
§ 46. Declension of Pronouns 58
Personal „ 58
§ 47. Possessive „ 60
§ 48. Demonstrative „ 62
§ 49. Relative and Interrogative Pronouns 64
§ 50. Definitive Pronouns 67
§ 51. Indefinite „ 68
§ 52. Declension of Adjectives 71
§ 53. Hard „ 72
§ 54. Soft „ 77
§ 55. Possessive „ 80
§ 56. Note on terminations of Adjectives 82
§ 57. Comparison of Adjectives 83
The Predicative Comparative 83
§ 58. The Attributive „ 86
§ 59. The Superlative 87
§ 60. The Numerals 88
Cardinal and Ordinal Numerals 88
§ 61. Declension and use of the Numerals 89
§ 62. Cardinal Numbers in Composition 94
§ 63. Ordinal Numbers 94

PAGE

§ 64. Distributive Numerals 95
§ 65. Multiplicative Numerals 95
§ 66. Collective Numerals 96
§ 67. Fractions 97
§ 68. Expression of Time 98
§ 69. Expression of Money-Values 103
§ 70. The Adverb 104
§ 71. Adverbs of Place 106
§ 72. „ Time 108
§ 73. „ Manner 109
§ 74. „ Degree and Quantity 111
Note on the comparison of Adverbs 114
§ 75. Particles and Conjunctions 115
§ 76. Questions and Answers 116
§ 77. Negations 117
§ 78. Subordinative Conjunctions 118
The Prepositions and the Use of the Cases with and without Prepositions 118
§ 79. Alphabetical list of Prepositions 118
§ 80. The Nominative 120
§ 81. The Genitive 120
§ 82. The Dative 128
§ 83. The Accusative 132
§ 84. The Instrumental 138
§ 85. The Locative 143
§ 86. The Verb 146
§ 87. The Present 147
§ 88. Present Regular Verbs, Classes I and II . . . 150
§ 89. Present Irregular Verbs 161
§ 90. The Past 162
§ 91. The Future 167
§ 92. The Conditional 167
§ 93. The Imperative 168
§ 94. The Infinitive 170
§ 95. The Gerund 170
§ 96. The Participles: Present Participle Active . . . 172
§ 97. „ Past „ „ . . . 172
§ 98. „ Present „ Passive . . . 172
§ 99. „ Past „ „ . . . 173

PAGE
§ 100. The Reflexive Verb 175
§ 101. The uses of the Verb 176
The Aspects
§ 102. Use of the Present 179
§ 103. ,, Past 182
§ 104. ,, Future 186
§ 105. ,, Conditional 189
§ 106. ,, Imperative 192
§ 107. ,, Infinitive 195
§ 108. ,, Gerund 199
§ 109. ,, Participles 200
§ 110. ,, Reflexive Verb and the expression of the Passive 202
§ 111. Impersonal Verbs 204
§ 112. How to express the verb *to be* 206
§ 113. Various forms of Imperfective and Perfective Verbs . 209
§ 114. Perfective Simple Verbs 217
§ 115. Imperfective Compound Verbs 219
§ 116. Simple Imperfective Verbs with two forms . . . 221
§ 117. Anomalous Verbs 228
§ 118. Prepositions in composition with verbs, nouns, &c. . 231

The Written Alphabet



Russian as Written

Только вымолвить успела,
Дверь тихонько заскрыпела,
И в светлицу входит царь,
Стороны той государь.
Во все время разговора
Он стоял позади забора,
Речь последнюю по всему
Полюбился ему.
„Здравствуй, красная девица,
Говорит он, будь царица,
И роди богатыря
Мне к исходу сентября."

(Пушкин)

ORTHOGRAPHY

§ 1. History of the Alphabet.

THE alphabet used by the Russians and by the other Slavs of the orthodox confession, Servians and Bulgarians, for the rendering of the sounds of their language is that known as the Cyrillic (кири́ллица). It is so called because its composition is attributed to St. Cyril (826–869), a Greek of Salonika, whose secular name was Constantine, who with his brother Methodius was commissioned by the Emperor Michael II to effect the conversion of Moravia, the Prince of Moravia having expressed a wish to see Christianity introduced into his country. Confronted with the problem how to communicate the Truth to the savages of Pannonia, he with great ingenuity elaborated an alphabet which with scientific accuracy represented the sounds of the Slavonic vernacular, so different from those of Greek. His work was facilitated by his knowledge of the Slavonic dialects current at that time in Macedonia, indeed it was on this account that he had been chosen to accomplish the task. The Slavonic language, for the transcription of whose sounds he composed his alphabet, is now generally considered to have been Old Bulgarian, which was, however, quite possibly intelligible to the inhabitants of Moravia at a time when the several Slavonic languages were without doubt very far from being so divergent from one another as they are to-day. Whether it was of the alphabet now called Cyrillic that St. Cyril was the author, or of the cognate alphabet called Glagolitic, still used in remote parts of Dalmatia, is uncertain, but it is probable that of the two, the latter, the Glagolitic, which has been proved to be older than the Cyrillic and was founded on the Greek minuscule script of the ninth century, was that actually compiled by him, and was later owing to the complexity of its character almost everywhere supplanted by the alphabet now known as the Cyrillic, which, founded on the Greek majuscule

script, was much clearer than the Glagolitic. The Cyrillic is the only alphabet the use of which the Russians have ever known, and it is not unnatural that its origin should have been attributed to the man who was the first to put down any Slavonic dialect in black on white, and has ever since been regarded as the fountain of their enlightenment by all Slavs of the Eastern faith. The art of writing was introduced into Russia simultaneously with Christianity in the tenth century, and the Cyrillic alphabet was imposed upon the country with as much vigour as the new religion, but with far less regard for local conditions. The alphabet had been an admirable instrument for rendering Old Bulgarian, but the phonology of that language was then already very different from that of Russian. Old Bulgarian (called in Russian 'Church-Slavonic'), however, immediately established itself as the language of the church, a position it still holds with quite inconsiderable modifications to-day; it became the only approved medium of expression for all literary work, and, though it could not remain altogether free from the influences of the vernacular Russian, especially in works of a secular character, yet the alphabet itself took such firm root, that no attempts to alter it have been successful. Of the influence of Old Bulgarian, or Church-Slavonic, on the grammatical forms and vocabulary of Russian, mention will be made later. Here it is only necessary to remind the student that the discrepancies between Russian as it is written and Russian as it is spoken, the illogicalness of Russian orthography, which owes its quaint charm to a sense of historical tradition and recalls that of our own language, and consequently much of the difficulty experienced in mastering Russian, are all due to the fact that the Cyrillic alphabet was not originally made for that language. It is necessary in every language to submit to certain conventions, and it is doubtful whether those which regulate the orthography of the Western Slavonic languages, e. g. Polish and Czech, which use a distorted Latin alphabet, are more rational and less formidable than those which govern Russian. Besides Sanskrit, the only language which has a really scientific alphabet, in which every letter corresponds exactly and without help of accents to the sound it is intended to represent, is Servian, where there was no historical tradition strong enough to obstruct reform. The Cyrillic alphabet is based on that

of the Greek majuscule script but contains important additional signs, the origin of which is not known, representing sounds which never existed in Greek. Its directly Greek origin is apparent in the quite unnecessary incorporation in it of ἦτα (и), ἰῶτα (i), and ὖ ψιλόν (v), which all had exactly the same value in Greek as it was spoken in the ninth century, viz. i, and in the necessity of inventing a separate sign for *b* (Б б), because the Greek β was in the ninth century only pronounced as *v*, except after *m*, e. g. λαμβάνω, while in Old Bulgarian *b* never followed on a nasal consonant. The Cyrillic characters, which were originally very plain, but had by the eighteenth century assumed somewhat complicated and unwieldy shapes, were by Peter the Great simplified for the requirements of modern printing and at the present time have the following appearance:

§ 2. The Alphabet.

PRINTED	ITALIC	TRANSLITERATED	NAME
А а	*А а*	*a*	а
Б б	*Б б*	*b*	бе
В в	*В в*	*v*	ве
Г г	*Г г*	*g*	ге
Д д	*Д д*	*d*	де
Е е	*Е е*	*e*[1]	е
Ж ж	*Ж ж*	*zh*	же
З з	*З з*	*z*	зе
И и	*И и*		и
І і	*І і*	*i*[2]	і съ то́чкой (= i *with a dot*)
Й й[3]	*Й й*		й съ кра́ткой (= i *with a short quantity*)
К к	*К к*	*k*	ка
Л л	*Л л*	*l*	эль

[1] After vowels, also after ъ and ь, both e and ѣ are transliterated *ye*.

[2] The very common adjectival terminations -ый and -ій are transliterated by the one letter *y*.

[3] These four letters, й ъ ы ь, are never initial.

PRINTED	ITALIC	TRANSLITERATED	NAME
М м	*М м*	*m*	эмъ
Н н	*Н н*	*n*	энъ
О о	*О о*	*o*	о
П п	*П п*	*p*	пе
Р р	*Р р*	*r*	эръ
С с	*С с*	*s*	эсъ
Т т	*Т т*	*t*	те
У у	*У у*	*u*	у
Ф ф	*Ф ф*	*f*	эфъ
Х х	*Х х*	*kh*[1]	ха
Ц ц	*Ц ц*	*ts*	це
Ч ч	*Ч ч*	*ch*	че
Ш ш	*Ш ш*	*sh*	ша
Щ щ	*Щ щ*	*shch*	ща
Ъ ъ[3]	*Ъ ъ*	[omitted in transliteration, cf. § 9]	еръ
Ы ы[2]	*Ы ы*	*y*	еры́
Ь ь[2]	*Ь ь*	[usually omitted in transliteration, cf. § 14]	ерь
Ѣ ѣ	*Ѣ ѣ*	*e*[3]	ять
Э э	*Э э*	*e*	э оборо́тное (= *turned round*)
Ю ю	*Ю ю*	*yu*[4]	ю
Я я	*Я я*	*ya*[4]	я
Ѳ ѳ	*Ѳ ѳ*	*f*	ѳита́
Ѵ ѵ	*Ѵ ѵ*	*i*	и́жица

The place of x is taken in Russian by кс.

---

[1] Initial x is transliterated *h*.
[2] See note 3 on p. 17.
[3] See note 1 on p. 17.
[4] After i, ю and я are transliterated *u* and *a*.

PRONUNCIATION

§ 3. The Vowels.

There are ten vowels in Russian, five hard and, corresponding to these, five soft or palatalized, and two so-called mute vowels, one hard and one soft. A soft or palatalized vowel means a hard vowel preceded by the sound of the English letter *y* in such a way as to make a monophthong; e.g. the sound contained in the English words *you* or *yew* is really a palatalized *u*. This process of turning a hard into a soft vowel is called palatalization and plays a very important part in Russian. Whenever a soft or palatal vowel is preceded immediately by a consonant, the latter is affected by the *y*-sound of the palatal vowel and coalesces with it, the result being a softened or palatalized consonant. A consonant followed by a palatal vowel is pronounced differently from one followed by a hard vowel, though the effect of the palatal vowel is much greater on some consonants than on others, while the effect of certain palatal vowels is greater than that of others.

Further, a palatal vowel sometimes affects the pronunciation of a hard vowel in the preceding syllable, though here again certain palatal vowels particularly affect certain hard vowels.

The pronunciation of the vowels is further influenced by the position of the accent. The Russian is a stress accent and is mobile, i.e. it can fall on any syllable. There are certain rules for the placing of the accent, but as they are positively riddled with exceptions, it is far more difficult to learn them from a book than by ear or by reading accented texts; they have therefore been omitted in this grammar, the accent itself, however, of course being marked in the case of each word mentioned.

§ 4. Hard Vowels.

The five hard vowels are

а э ы о у

and the mute vowel ъ.

А а = *a*

when accented and not followed by a palatal vowel (sc. with an intermediate consonant) is pronounced somewhat as in *father* but is more like the *a* in the French *ma* = *my* (f.), or in the German *das Land*. e. g. да = *yes*, ра́но = *early*, ма́ло = *little* (adverb). When not accented (and not followed by a palatal vowel) it is of the same quality as accented a only much shorter, e. g. рабо́та = *work*. If, however, it precedes the accent by more than one syllable, or if, following the accent, it is itself followed by a hard vowel, then it is pronounced like the obscure vowel in English, i. e. like the first *a* in *paternal* or like *er* in *order*, e. g. тарака́нъ = *cockroach*, о́блако = *cloud*. Accented and unaccented a, when followed in a subsequent syllable by a palatal vowel, is pronounced much sharper, more like *a* in the French word *Espagne*, e. g. in such words as Ита́лія = *Italy* (pronounced as Italians pronounce *Italia*), далеко́ = *far*, даю́ = *I give*. For the pronunciation of accented a when followed by the soft mute vowel ь, cf. § 14. Initial a is very rare in Russian.

§ 5. **Э э** = *e*

(called in Russian э оборо́тное = *turned round*) occurs only in two or three genuinely Russian words (in which it is always accented) as a demonstrative prefix, but is common in words of foreign origin. Its pronunciation depends on whether it is followed in the next syllable by a hard or a soft (palatalized) vowel. If the vowel in the following syllable is hard, e. g. in the word э́то = *this* (N.), э is pronounced very open and has the value of *e*, *ai*, or *a* as they are pronounced respectively in the English words *ere*, *air*, or *fare* in the South of England. If the vowel in the following syllable is soft (e. g. и = *i*) э is pronounced like *a* in the Northern English *hate*, e. g. э́ти = *these* (M.F.N.), but with the lips still closer together. In foreign words э has the value of *e* in the English word *end*, e. g. эрмита́жъ = *the hermitage*, экземпля́ръ = *copy*, *specimen*, Эдуа́рдъ = *Edward*, when unaccented; if accented, it is liable to the same changes as the demonstrative pronominal prefix mentioned above, e. g. поэ́тъ = *poet*, but поэ́тѣ = *poet* (locative case); in the first case э is pronounced open, as in э́то, in the second more closed, as in э́ти.

§ 6. **Ы ы** = *y*

This is the vowel the pronunciation of which causes most difficulty to foreigners, but less to Britons than to Germans or Frenchmen, because a sound very much like it exists in English. Its approximately correct pronunciation is best attained by saying with clenched teeth the syllables containing *y i* in the following English words: *Whitby, till, mill, rill, sill, sandy.* Russian words with similar syllables are, e.g. былъ = *he was*, ты = *thou*, мы = *we*, рылъ = *he dug*, сынъ = *son*, дымъ = *smoke.* The pronunciation of ы is comparatively little affected by being unaccented or by subsequent soft vowels. The ы in e.g. была́, *she was*, scarcely differs at all from that in былъ. The ы in e.g. бы́ли = *they were* (where it is followed by the soft vowel и) is pronounced not quite so thickly, but must still be pronounced with clenched teeth. It is important not to confuse the vowel *y* now adopted to transliterate ы in English with the semi-vowel *y* which denotes palatalization. ы is never initial, and cannot stand after к, г, х, ж, ч, ш, or щ, after which letters its place is always taken by и. It is important to notice, however, that after ж, ш, and щ the vowel и is pronounced like ы except when followed by ь or by a palatal vowel in the next syllable.

§ 7. **О о** = *o*

has the value, when accented, of the Italian *o* in *Roma*, much opener than the English *o* in *shore*, and more like the *aw* in *saw*. Examples: онъ = *he*, до́ма = *at home.* When unaccented the quality of о is entirely changed, and it is pronounced like unaccented a (cf. § 4), i.e. like the obscure vowel in English, i. e. like the first *a* in *paternal*, or like the *er* in *order*, e.g. in the words пора́ = *time*, хорошо́ = *all right*, до́рого = *dear* (adv.), in all of which it sounds much more like an *a* than an *o*. This peculiarity of Russian as spoken in Moscow and to the west and south of that city explains the old English rendering of Москва́ (*Moscow*) by Muscovy. The effect of a soft vowel on о in a preceding syllable is very marked; the palatalization is anticipated and о is pronounced almost like *oi* in English *oil*, e.g. in бо́ли = *pains.*

§ 8. **У у** = *u*

when accented is pronounced like English *oo* in *boot*, e. g. у́тка = *duck*, могу́ = *I can*, у́мный = *clever*; when unaccented it is

shorter, like English *oo* in *book*, e. g. мóгутъ = *they can*, чугýнъ = *cast-iron*. It is not affected by a subsequent soft vowel as much as are a, ɔ, and o, though slight anticipation of the palatal also takes place. The reason why Russian *u* is written y is that the sound could only be represented in Greek by *ov*, which was incorporated in the Cyrillic alphabet as oy and for long written thus ; these were later made into a compound letter ȣ, which in its turn became gradually assimilated to the Western European *y*, but with a different value.

§ 9. **Ъ ъ**

called in Russian еръ (pronounced *yare*, the *a* having the value of *a* in the English words *ware, fare*, and the *r* being rolled) or твёрдый знакъ = *the hard sign*, is the hard mute vowel. This letter, at the time the alphabet was made for the Old Bulgarian language in the ninth century, had the value of a full vowel, and was pronounced like a very short *u*, probably like the *u* in the English word *bulb*, which value it still retains in modern Bulgarian. The letter was adopted by the Russians together with all the rest of the alphabet at the time of their conversion in the tenth century, but there is nothing to prove that there was a sound corresponding to this letter in the Russian as spoken then, though it is probable that at some earlier period the sound had existed also in Russian. In Russian as we know it this letter has never been anything more than a cipher. Its function is a purely negative one, viz. to show that the preceding consonant is not palatalized (softened) but pronounced hard, a fact which the total omission of this letter would indicate equally clearly. In the advertisement columns of the press, in some newspapers, and by people who either make a point of being up-to-date or wish to save time and space, it is frequently omitted, but in all printed books, in the majority of newspapers, and by most people it is still used owing to the authority of tradition and convention. ъ is commonest as a terminal, it is never initial, and the convention for the use of medial ъ is that in those words which begin with a vowel and are compounded with a preposition ending in a hard consonant, the preposition retains the ъ, e. g. объ ясне́ніе = *explanation* is written объясне́ніе.

§ 10. Soft Vowels.

The five corresponding soft or palatal vowels are

я е (ѣ) и (й і ѵ) [ё] ю

and the mute vowel ь.

Я я = *ya*

is palatalized a and when accented is pronounced like it, e.g. Я́лта = *Yalta*. When it is preceded by a consonant it coalesces with it and forms a palatalized consonant, e.g. ня́ня = *nurse*, where н has the value of *gn* in the French word *Espagne*, дя́дя = *uncle*, where д is like *dy* in *Rudyard*.

In the syllable immediately preceding or following the accent я retains its quality but is much shorter. When preceding the accent by more than one syllable its quality changes and it is pronounced like a short *i* or *e*, e.g. рядъ = *rank, row*, is pronounced *ryád*, nom. pl. ряды́ = *the ranks : ryadý* (cf. § 6), but рядово́й = *a private, ridavói* or *ryedavói*.

я never occurs after ж, ц, ч, ш, or щ.

§ 11. Е е and Ѣ ѣ (or Ꙗ ꙗ)

е and ѣ in Old Bulgarian represented two distinct sounds, е : *ĕ* and ѣ : *ē*, but they are both pronounced exactly alike in Russian, where the quantitative differences between *ĕ* and *ē* have been lost. The letter ѣ (called ять), which has two forms ѣ and ꙗ (ѣ and *ꙗ*), is only retained thanks to historical tradition. Like ъ it has been abandoned in the Government telegraph service, and the words in which its use is etymologically essential have with immense difficulty to be memorized. Unaccented е and ѣ are always pronounced *ye* as in *yet*, e.g. Екатери́на = *Catherine*, pron. *Yekatyerína* (*i* = Italian *i*); Бѣлгра́дъ = *Belgrade*, pron. *Byelgrád*; ѣда́ = *food*, pron. *yedá*. Accented, the pronunciation of е and ѣ is affected like that of э (cf. § 5) by the character of the vowel in the following syllable. If followed by a hard vowel in the following syllable, by a hard terminal consonant, or if terminal themselves, they are pronounced like е in similar case, only preceded by the *y* semi-vowel, i.e. very open, as in English *air, fare*, e.g. газе́та = *newspaper*, pron. *gazyéta*; уже́ = *already*, pron. *uzhé*; ѣ́ду = *I am riding*, pron. *yédu*; мнѣ = *to me*, pron. *mnyé*; ѣмъ = *I eat*, pron. *yém*.

If followed by a soft (or palatalized) vowel accented е and ѣ are pronounced like *ya* in the word *Yale*, or like the English word *yea*, but with the lips still closer together, e.g. газéтѣ = *newspaper* (dat. sing.), éсли = *if*, ѣдетъ = *he is riding*, ей = *to her*, здѣсь = *here*. The consonants ж, ч, ш, щ absorb the *y*-sound inherent in е (ѣ), so that when preceded by them е sounds like э, e.g. женá = *wife*, pron. *zhená*; человѣкъ = *human being*, pron. *chelavyék*; шéя = *neck*, pron. *shéya*; щекá = *cheek*, pron. *shchekᵃ́*, though when ч and щ (which are palatal consonants) are followed by accented е (ѣ), the *y*-sound is still audible unless the words are spoken very rapidly, e.g. чѣмъ (inst. sing. of что = *what*) = *than*, pron. *chyem*; чéрезъ = *over, through, across*, pron. *chyéryez*; щель = *chink, crack*, pron. *shchyel'* (*l'* = palatalized *l*).

[Ё ё = *yo*]

It is a peculiarity of Russian that accented е before a hard consonant or when terminal, although in certain categories of words pronounced as stated above, yet in the majority of cases changes its quality and is pronounced like a Russian о (cf. § 7) preceded by *y* semi-vowel. This vowel which is really a palatalized о corresponding to hard о is not counted as a separate vowel and is therefore here placed in brackets. At one time it was the custom in writing and printing to differentiate this ё by placing a diaeresis over it, but as Russians know instinctively when to pronounce е as *yo*, such an aid was felt to be unnecessary and is now seldom used. In this book the pronunciation of е as *yo* is indicated throughout. As only *accented* е is pronounced *yo*, the accent is in these cases omitted and replaced by the diaeresis. Examples: селó = *village*, pron. *syeló*; but сёла = *villages*, pron. *syóla*; éсли = *if* (и is a soft vowel and softens or palatalizes the preceding consonant, therefore е retains its original value), but ёлка = *spruce-tree*, pron. *yólka* (а is a hard vowel); вéсело = *cheerful* (adv.), pron. *vyésyelo* (е is a soft vowel and palatalizes the с, therefore the first е retains its original value), but весёлая = *cheerful* (nom. sing. F.), pron. *vyesyólaya* (because although я is soft, yet the vowel which immediately follows accented е is hard). Accented е followed by a consonant +ъ is also pronounced *yo* as ъ has the value of a hard vowel, e.g. вёлъ = *he led*, pron. *vyól*; нёсъ = *he brought*, pron. *nyós*; ёжъ = *hedgehog*, pron. *yósh* (cf. § 19).

Terminal accented e is always pronounced *yo* except in the one word уже́ mentioned above, e. g. её = *her* (acc. sing. from она́), pron. *yeyó*; моё = *my* (nom. acc. sing. N.), pron. *mǎyó*. Just as e, although followed by a hard consonant and vowel, is nevertheless in many cases not pronounced *yo* (cf. p. 23), so conversely it *is* pronounced *yo* in many cases where it is not to be expected, i. e. although followed by a soft or palatalized consonant and vowel; such cases are entirely due to analogical influence; e. g. ведёмъ = *we are leading*, pron. *vyedyóm*, has by its analogy caused ведёте = *you are leading*, to be pronounced *vyedyótye*, although the accented e is followed by palatalized consonant and soft vowel e; телёнокъ = *calf*, pron. *tyelyónak*, and телёнкѣ = *calf* (loc. sing.), pron. *tyelyónkye*, influenced by the e in the nom. and in all the other cases, although followed by the soft vowel ѣ; горо́ю = *hill*, pron. *garóyu* (instr. sing. of F. decl. in -а), has influenced землёю = *earth*, pron. *zyemlyóyu* (instr. sing. of F. decl. in -я) although followed by the soft vowel ю = *yu*. In cases where there is no analogical influence, accented e before a soft vowel or palatalized consonant is pronounced *ye*, as would be expected, e. g. Шереме́тевъ = *Sheryemyétyev*, моéй = instr. sing. F. from мой = *my*.

The consonants ж, ч, ш, щ absorb the *y*-sound inherent in ё, so that when preceded by them ё sounds just like о, e. g. жёнъ (= gen. pl. from жена́ = *wife*), pron. *zhon*; чёмъ (loc. sing. from что = *what*), pron. *chom*; шёлъ (= past tense of идти́ = *to go*), pron. *shol*; ещё = *more*, pron. *yeshchó*, colloquially often *ishchó*.

On the analogy of accented e followed by a hard consonant and vowel being pronounced *yo*, accented ѣ followed by a hard consonant and vowel is also in certain cases pronounced *yo*, a result of the two letters being pronounced identically. ѣ is thus pronounced in the following words: сѣ́дла = *saddles* (nom. sing. сѣ́дло́), гнѣ́зда = *nests* (nom. sing. гнѣздо́), звѣ́зды = *stars* (nom. sing. звѣзда́), пріобрѣ́лъ = *obtained* (past tense from пріобрѣсти́), цвѣ́лъ = *blossomed* (past tense from цвѣсти́), надѣ́ванъ = *put on* (part. pass. from надѣва́ть), and запечатлѣ́нъ = *marked* (part. pass. from запечатлѣ́ть). Even accented я is in three cases pronounced *yo*, owing again to the confusion caused by the similarity in the pronunciation of unaccented e, ѣ, and я; the three words in question are: трёсъ = *shook* (past tense from трясти́), запрёгъ = *harnessed* (past tense from запря́чь), and её = *of her* (gen. sing. from она́). In

all these cases unaccented е, ѣ, and я are short vowels of very uncertain quality; they vary from *ă* to *ĕ* and *ĭ*, hence the confusion in the pronunciation of certain words where they bear the accent.

§ 12. И (й і ѵ, cf. § 1)

These four letters represent only one sound, which is that of the Italian *i*, and the reasons for their existence and for the continuance of their use are purely conventional and traditional.

и (sometimes called и просто́е = *simple i*)

is by far the most common of the four; it is used (i) at the beginning of words, if followed by a consonant; (ii) in the middle of words, if preceded and followed by a consonant; (iii) in the middle of words, if it is preceded by a vowel but at the same time begins a fresh syllable itself; and (iv) at the end of words if it stands as a single vowel, or if, preceded by another vowel, it forms a fresh syllable itself.

й,

called и съ кра́ткой (= *i with a short quantity*), is only used after another vowel when it forms one syllable (i.e. a diphthong) with it, therefore never at the beginning of words.

і,

called и съ то́чкой (= *i with a dot*), is only used before another vowel when it does not form one syllable with it, therefore never at the end of words.

ѵ,

called и́жица (= *little yoke*), dim. of и́го = *yoke*), is a transcription of the Greek υ (upsilon), which in late Greek acquired the value of short *i*. In modern Russian it is only used in a few ecclesiastical words of Greek origin, and its place even in these is often taken by и.

и being a palatal (or soft) vowel always affects the pronunciation of a preceding consonant, though the y-sound which comes between it and a preceding consonant is not always so clearly audible as it is in the case of е. The influence of и also extends further back than the consonant immediately preceding it, and affects the pronunciation of the vowel in the preceding syllable (cf. examples of the pronunciation of hard vowels when followed by и in the next syllable, §§ 5, 7). The consonants most

noticeably affected by a subsequent и are т (*t*) and д (*d*), н (*n*) and л (*l*), cf. the pronunciation of э́ти = *these*, § 5, and of дити́ = *child*, which is pronounced *dyítya*, the first syllable like *d'ye* in the phrase *how d'ye do*, они́ = *they*, pron. *anyí*; моли́тва, pron. *malyítva*. The difficulty which Russians have in pronouncing a clean *i*-sound after *t* and *d* is often to be noticed in their pronunciation of certain French words, such as *dites*, *bottines*, or indeed in that of any foreign words where *t* and *d* are followed by *i*, in which cases they are inclined to insert a *y*-sound between the consonant and the vowel.

It is to be noticed that и after the consonants ж and ш is, except when followed by ь or a palatal vowel in the following syllable, pronounced like ы, i. e. it becomes hard and loses its palatal quality, e. g. жиръ = *fat*, *grease*, pron. *zhyr*, but жизнь = life, pron. *zhizn'* (n' = palatalized n); широ́кій = *broad* (nom. sing. masc.), pron. *shyróki*, but ши́ре = *broader*, pron. *shírye*. After ч and щ on the other hand и is always palatal.

Curiously enough initial и in Russian has lost its preiotization; in Russian words beginning with и, the и is pronounced *i* and not *yi* as one would expect, e. g. и́ва = *willow* is pronounced *iva* (*i* = Italian *i*) and not *yiva*. The only exceptions to this are certain cases of the personal pronoun онъ = *he*, in which initial и is pronounced *yi*: имъ = *by him* (pron. *yim*), ихъ = *of them* (*yikh*), и́ми = *by them* (*yími*). These contain the original stem of the personal pronoun, *yi-*, whose defective nominative was supplied by those of the demonstrative pronoun онъ.

In the syllables -ый, -ій, -ой, in which the nom. sing. masc. of all Russian adjectives and of very many Russian family names (which are mostly adjectival in form) end, -й is merely the second half of a diphthong and is pronounced like *y* in the English word *boy*. It is to be noticed that in diphthongs such as ай and ой occurring in other words the й is often barely audible, e. g. пойди́ = *go!* or *come!* sounds like *padyí*, Михайлъ = *Michael*, like *Mikhál*.

The effect on the pronunciation of и of the absence or the presence of the accent on it is inappreciable; its pronunciation alters merely quantitatively, not qualitatively. Similarly, и being a palatal vowel, its pronunciation, except after ж, ш, is not affected by the presence of another palatal vowel in any subsequent syllable.

The form of the letter и is derived from the Greek Η η (ἦτα); it is curious to note that while the Greek Η has become и in Russian, the Greek Ν appears in Russian as н (cf. § 24).

For ѳ cf. § 11.

§ 13. **Ю ю = *yu***

is pronounced like the English word *you*, i. e. the Italian *u* preceded by the semi-vowel *y*, e. g. люблю́ (*lyublyú*) = *I love, I like.* The letter itself is a combination of ι (ἰῶτα) and ο (ὃ μικρόν). Its pronunciation is not affected by the presence or absence of the accent. ю is also used to represent French *u* and German *ü* in transliteration, e. g. Брю́ссель *Bruxelles*, Нюрнбергъ *Nürnberg*.

§ 14. **Ь ь**[1]

called in Russian ерь or мя́гкій знакъ = *the soft sign*, is the soft mute vowel. It is a word which is difficult both to transcribe adequately and to pronounce in English, but may be approximately rendered by *yér'*, pronouncing the *e* like the *ai* in the English word *waist* and the final *r'* with the tip of the tongue, softening or palatalizing them by adding to them the sound of the semi-vowel *y*, without, however, allowing the additional sound to form an additional syllable. Like ъ, the hard mute vowel, it once had the value of a full vowel, and was pronounced like a very short *i*, but in course of time its quality changed, it lost its power of forming a syllable, and became merely the sign of palatalization of a preceding consonant. Unlike ъ, however, it still plays an important part in Russian orthography and pronunciation, and could not easily be dispensed with. It is the only visible indication there is of the softening or palatalization of a preceding consonant. As already mentioned, this softening or palatalization is difficult to explain in the terms of a language, such as English, in which this particular process is comparatively rare; the general effect is to add to the preceding consonant a *y*-sound without allowing the sound thus added to form an additional syllable. The actual sound of a palatalized consonant of course occurs frequently enough in many other languages, e. g. *d* is palatalized

[1] In transliteration ь is popularly omitted, but in this book and for all scientific and bibliographical purposes its presence is indicated by an apostrophe, e. g. царь = *tsar'*.

in the English word *educate*, *n* in the Italian word *ogni*, *l* in the Spanish word *llama*, but the difficulty in Russian is that these palatalized consonants occur as often as not at the end of words, and it is in these cases that their pronunciation is a stumbling-block to foreigners. A further difficulty is caused by the fact that the consonant palatalized by ь, or rather ь itself, influences the pronunciation of a hard vowel in the preceding syllable, causing a throwing-back of the *i*-sound on to the preceding vowel, in German called the *i-Vorschlag*.

Examples of the similar effect of и on a hard vowel in a preceding syllable have already been given (cf. §§ 5, 7). A good instance of that produced by ь is the name of the Russian town Ха́рьковъ, the *a* of which is pronounced like the *ai* in the word *Cairo*; the first syllable Харь- is pronounced almost like the English word *hire*, rolling the *r*. Another word in which the effect of ь on a preceding hard vowel is very marked is царь = *tsar'*, in which the *a* is pronounced almost like the *ai* of Cairo; another is the name of the Siberian river Обь, commonly written in English *Obi*, but really a monosyllabic word, the pronunciation of which is approximately *Oip* (cf. § 15), *oi* having the value of *oi* in the English *coin*. This throwing-back of the *i*-sound is far more marked in the case of a and o than in that of the other hard vowels ы and y, while after э the soft mute vowel never occurs. The effect of the soft mute vowel, itself a palatal, on a preceding soft or palatal vowel is most marked in the case of я and е (ѣ), and scarcely noticeable in that of и and ю; in the only case where it occurs after ё, i.e. in the 2nd sing. of the present of some verbs, it is pronounced like ъ, i.e. is omitted. An example of ь after я is the word пять = *five*; in this case the throwing-back of the *i*-sound is not so marked as in that of the corresponding hard vowel a, but is nevertheless noticeable, while the final т is softened and pronounced, e.g. like the *Thi-* in the French name *Thiers*, i. e. it is palatalized, *but does not form a syllable*. The difference between я followed by ь and я followed by a hard vowel is very noticeable in the two words пять = *five* and пя́то = *heel*; in the latter я has the value of *ya* in the English words *yard*, *yarn*, while in the former it is nearly as thin as the *ya* in *Yat*, though not quite. Е or ѣ followed by ь is pronounced like *ya* in the word *Yale*, but with lips still closer together, e. g. есть = *there is*, is pronounced

approximately like *yaist*, i. e. like the English *waist*, with a palatalized *t*. The pronunciation of these consonants followed by ь is one of the greatest difficulties for Englishmen talking Russian, and the very name of this letter—ерь—is one of the hardest words in the language to pronounce correctly.

It is to be noticed that in the 2nd pers. sing. of the present of all verbs, which without exception ends in -шь, the ь has no effect at all, and the ш is pronounced hard, as if it were шъ, e. g. идёшь = *thou goest*, pron. *idyosh* ; ви́дишь = *thou seest*, pron. *vidyish*.

ь may occur in the middle as well as at the end of words, though it cannot stand at the beginning of a word. Its function is always the same, viz. to palatalize or soften a preceding consonant. Etymologically it always represents the last remains of a lost *ĭ* when it occurs in Russian words, and it is also used frequently in the transcription of foreign words. The word возьму́ = *I shall take*, is pronounced approximately *vaizmú* or *voizmú* (*ai* as in Cairo, *oi* as in coin), and is of only two, not three syllables; семья́ = *family*, is pronounced *syemyá* ; бью = *I hit*, is pronounced *byú* (of course as one syllable); чьё = *whose* (N., interrog. pron.), *chyó* (as one syllable), and so on. In a number of neuter nouns ending in -е, either i or ь may be used, and the pronunciation is the same, e. g. имéніе or имéнье = *property* (pronounced *imyénye*—usually as three, but sometimes as four syllables). ь is used in the transcription of foreign words such as пьяни́но = *an upright piano*, pronounced *pianino*, as in Italian, and always after *l* in foreign words before consonants or at the end, to show that the *l* is to be pronounced as single *l* in French and not like the Russian deep *l*, e. g. О́льденбургъ = *Oldenburg*, Брю́ссель = *Brussels*. It may be added that the effect of ь on terminal dentals, nasals, and liquid consonants is far more marked than on labials, palatals, and sibilants. ь does not occur after gutturals, which become palatals before it, and is never initial.

The Consonants.

§ 15. **Б б = *b***

is pronounced as in English, except medial б before a voiceless consonant and final б (sc. бъ or бь), when it becomes voiceless, i.e. *p*, e.g. лобъ = *forehead*, pron. *lop*; го́лубь = *pigeon*, pron. *gólup*; голубчикъ = *little pigeon*, pron. *galúpchik*.[1]

Before a palatal vowel *b* is palatalized (softened), though it is not as much affected by palatalization as are some other consonants; indeed in rapid speech, *when unaccented*, the palatalization is sometimes scarcely noticeable, e.g. безъ = *without*, pron. *byez* (one syllable), but in rapid conversation *bez*, though it is of course never wrong to bring out the palatalization. It is always better to over-palatalize than to under-palatalize. Before an accented palatal vowel *b* is of course always palatalized, e.g. побѣ́да = *victory*, pron. *pabyéda* (three syllables), бью = *I hit*, pron. *byu* (one syllable).

Before the palatal vowel и, however, even when this is accented, the palatalization of б is not expressed, owing to the physical inconvenience involved in doing so, e.g. лю́битъ = *he loves*, pron. *lyúbit*; уби́йца = *murderer*, pron. *ubítsa*, though it is very important to remember that the *i* here is pronounced like the English *ee* in e.g. *beet*, *never* like *i* in the words *bit*, *bill*. As Greek β was pronounced *v* at the time the Cyrillic alphabet was made, a new sign, viz. б, had to be invented to represent *b*.

§ 16. **В в = *v***

is pronounced as in English, except medial в before a voiceless consonant and final в (sc. въ or вь), when it becomes voiceless, i.e. *f*, e.g. ровъ = *ditch*, pron. *rof*; любо́вь = *love*, pron. *lyubóif* (two syllables, cf. § 14); ковшъ = *ladle*, pron. *kofsh*.

Before a palatal vowel в is palatalized (softened), following б in this respect (q.v.). As in the case of б, the extent to which the palatalization is noticeable depends very much on whether the palatal vowel is accented or not, while before the palatal vowel и

[1] It is worth remarking that the word рубль = *rouble*, is pronounced *rup*, as if it ended in бь.

it is not expressed at all, even when this is accented, e.g. весна́ = *spring* (*of the year*), pron. *vyesná*, which in rapid conversation may often sound like *vesná*, but вѣ́ра = *faith*, always *vyéra*, the *yer* of which is pronounced like *ierre* in the French *Pierre*; вью = *I wind*, pron. *vyu*, like the English *view*; вино́ = *wine*, pron. *vinó* (*i* = Italian *i*).

In the transliteration of foreign words beginning with *eu-* and *auto-* the Greek υ is in Russian represented by в, e.g. Евге́ній = *Eugen*, pron. *Yevgyéni*, автомоби́ль = *motor-car*, pron. *aftomobíl*.

The form of this letter is derived from the Greek.

§ 17. **Г г = *g***

is pronounced in various ways. Initial г is always hard, like *g* in the English *go*, when followed by a vowel or by the consonants в, л, р, н, ж, з. In the word гдѣ = *where*, г is usually pronounced like a voiced *kh*, and may be transcribed *gh* —*ghdyé*, though sometimes here also as hard *g* or even as *k*. Г is also pronounced *gh* in the vocative of Госпо́дь = *Lord*: Го́споди, pron. *ghóspodyi*.

Medial г before a voiceless consonant is pronounced *kh*, like *ch* in the Scotch *loch*, e.g. ко́гти = *claws*, pron. *kókhtyi*; before a voiced consonant it is pronounced usually *gh*, but also sometimes *g* or *k*, e.g. когда́ = *when*, pron. *kaghdá*, but also *kakdá* and *kagdá*.

Medial г before a vowel is hard, e.g. мно́го = *much*, pron. *mnóga*, but is as often as not pronounced *gh*, *mnógha*, могу́ = *I am able*, is pronounced *magú*, but as frequently *maghú*. In the oblique cases of the word Богъ = *God*, г is always pronounced *gh*, e.g. Бо́гу = *to God*, *bóghu*. In the genitive singular masculine and neuter of all adjectives (in which connexion it is important to remember that most Russian family names are adjectives) and declinable pronouns, -аго, -его, -ого, and -яго, г is pronounced *v*, e.g. его́ = *of him*, pron. *yevó*; Толсто́го = *of Tolstói*, pron. *Talstóva*. The reason for this is that the Old Bulgarian orthography adopted by the Russians was never altered by the latter to correspond to Russian pronunciation, which in this case differed from that of Old Bulgarian. It is a good instance to quote when Russians accuse English of being written one way and spoken another. It is important to remember that the word мно́го = *much* (quoted above) is not a genitive but an indeclinable pronoun, and is therefore not affected by this rule; likewise the negative немно́го = *little*.

Final г (sc. гъ) is always voiceless, i.e. *k*, except in the word Богъ = *God*, when it is pronounced *kh* as in Scotch *loch*, e.g. могъ = *I was able*, pron. *mok*, but Богъ always *bokh*.

г cannot be followed by ы (which it turns into и) nor by ь; г followed by a palatal vowel is pronounced hard, but with a *y*-sound immediately afterwards, e.g. по Во́лгѣ (= dat. of Во́лга) = *along the Volga* (pron. *Vólgye*), геогра́фія = *geography*, pron. *gyeográfia*, but in rapid speech the *y* is scarcely noticeable. In the transliteration of foreign names and words г is always used to represent *h*, a quaint convention established by Peter the Great; x would have been in most cases more rational. The resulting phenomena are often bizarre, e.g. В. Гюго = *V. Hugo*, Гаруйчъ-Гукъ-фанъ-Голландъ = *Harwich—Hook of Holland*, Гуль = *Hull* (N.B. *not*, as might be thought, *Goole*); гидрофо́бія = *hydrophobia*.

The form of this letter is derived from the Greek.

§ 18. Д д = *d*

The pronunciation of the dental consonants in particular is affected by the quality of the subsequent vowel. Initial and medial д before a hard vowel, also initial and medial д + в, л, м, н, р is very frequently, i.e. in the pronunciation of many people, strictly *inter-dental*, i.e. the tongue while forming the sound touches both the upper and lower teeth. The sound produced is more like the Irish *d*, rather than the ordinary English *d*, which is of course not inter-dental, but cerebral, i.e. the tongue while forming the sound touches not the teeth but the roof of the mouth. On the other hand, no aspirate is audible in the Russian д before a hard vowel. In the pronunciation of some Russians the inter-dental quality of the д before a hard vowel is not so noticeable, but as a general rule it is strictly inter-dental as opposed to our purely cerebral *d*. It may be remarked that it is physically easier to give the full value to the hard vowels а, о, ы, у after an inter-dental than after a cerebral *d*, and therefore the inter-dental pronunciation for a foreigner is doubly important.

Initial and medial д before a palatal (soft) vowel is, on the other hand, not inter-dental but strongly palatalized, i.e. pronounced like *dy* in, e.g. the English *d'you* (*think*), e.g. дя́дя = *uncle*, pron. *dyádya* (only two syllables), дѣ́ло = *matter*, pron. *dyélo*, Оде́сса

— *Odéssa*, pron. *Adyéssa*, дитя́ = *child*, pron. *dyityá*. This explains how it is that Russians, although such good linguists, sometimes mispronounce foreign words, e.g. *Dickens*, often pronounced *Dyickens*, *Divonne* = *Dyivonne*, &c. Medial д followed by the palatal vowel ь + another consonant is difficult for foreigners to pronounce, e.g. седьмо́й = *seventh*, is only a disyllable, pron. *syedymói*, in which *dy* has the same quality as the *d'y* in *d'you*; it is important to remember that it is neither English *d* nor English *j*. In the imperatives бу́дьте = *be* (2nd pl.) and ся́дьте = *be seated* (2nd pl.) the дь becomes as it were lost in the т, which is strongly emphasized as if it were тт, so that these words (both very common) are pronounced *búttye* (*u* of course as in Italian), *syáttye*.

Final д (sc. дъ) becomes voiceless, i.e. *t*, but as ъ is a hard vowel д still remains inter-dental, i.e. with the tip of the tongue touching both rows of teeth, e.g. годъ = *year*, pron. *got*. Final д (sc. дь) is pronounced like palatalized *t*, e.g. like *t y* in *let you*, e.g. будь = *be* (2nd sing.), pron. *búty*, which is of course a monosyllable, the *y* here only representing palatalization. In the transliteration of foreign names дж is used to represent *j*, e.g. Джэмзъ = *James*.

The form of this letter is derived from the Greek.

§ 19. **Ж ж** = *zh*

is pronounced like *s* in the English word *measure*, except when medial before a voiceless consonant and final, sc. жь or жъ, when it becomes voiceless itself, i.e. *sh*. The effect of a palatal vowel on medial ж is to make it slightly thinner (the *y*-sound is scarcely noticeable), something between *z* and *zh*, though nearer to *zh* than to *z*. Examples: жена́ = *wife*, pron. *zhená*, жа́жда = *thirst*, pron. *zházhda*, мужики́ = *peasants*, pron. *muzhikí*, мужъ = *husband*, pron. *mush*, ло́жка = *spoon*, pron. *lóshka*. For the pronunciation of и, е, and ё after ж cf. §§ 11, 12. ы cannot stand after ж, which turns it into и. ь after final ж has the effect on preceding vowels described in § 14. ж is always used to represent French *j*, e.g. журна́лъ = *magazine* (from French *journal*), and with д (дж) to represent English *j* (cf. § 18). The form of this letter is of unknown origin.

§ 20. **З з** = *z*

is pronounced as in English, except when medial before a voiceless consonant and final, i.e. зь or зъ, when it becomes voiceless

itself, i. e. *s*, as in *sun*. The effect of a palatal vowel on з when medial is merely to soften it by adding to it a *y*-sound, but in an unaccented syllable this is scarcely noticeable. Examples: злой *malicious*, pron. *zloi*, зе́ркало = *mirror*, pron. *zyérkala*, зима́ = *winter*, pron. *zimá*, указъ = *decree*, pron. *ukas* (*u* = Italian *u*), but указъ о зе́мствѣ = *a decree about the zemstvo*, pron. *ukáz a zyémstvye*. In words where з is followed by ж (q. v.) the latter absorbs the former, e. g. во́жжи = *reins*, pron. *vózhi*, with emphasis on the *zh*. Whenever the prepositions раз- (= *dis-*), воз- (= *up*), and низ- (= *down*), which are only used in composition, are compounded with a word beginning with a voiceless consonant (except с), the з is pronounced *and written as* с; e. g. раско́лъ = *dissent*, pron. *raskól*, восхо́дъ = *ascent*, pron. *vaskhót*, but разска́зъ = *tale*, pron. *raskás*.

The form of this letter is derived from the Greek.

§ 21. **К к** = *k*

is pronounced as in English, except before к, г, and т, when it is usually pronounced *kh* (i. e. like *ch* in Scotch *loch*). Examples: какъ = *how*, pron. *kak*; кѣмъ = *by whom*, pron. *kyem* (one syllable), but къ кому́ = *to whom*, pron. *khkamú* (two syllables); кто = *who*, pron. *khto*. к cannot be followed by ы (which it turns into и) nor by ь.

§ 22. **Л л** = *l*

is pronounced in two very distinct ways, according to whether it is followed by a hard or a soft (palatal) vowel. Before a hard vowel, or before a consonant followed by a hard vowel, it is pronounced as in Yorkshire or Scotland, i. e. with the tip of the tongue curling upwards, leaving a space between the tongue and the roof of the mouth. This is often called guttural *l*, but it is really rather cerebral than guttural. Many Russians pronounce it without touching, or barely touching, the palate with the tip of the tongue, so that it sounds like *w*. The Polish deep *l*, written in Polish *ł*, is almost always thus pronounced. Those Englishmen who find it difficult to pronounce the deep Russian *l* as *l*, can solve the difficulty and increase the chances of being mistaken for real Russians, by fearlessly pronouncing л *before hard vowels* like English *w*, e. g. ла́мпа = *lamp*, pron. *lámpa*, *wámpa* (*a* of course as in Italian); луна́ = *moon*, pron. *luná*, *wuná*; лобъ = *forehead*, pron. *lop*, *wop*; лось = *reindeer*, pron. *lois*, *wois*; ёлка = *Christmas-tree*,

pron. *yólka*, *yówka*; лгунъ = *liar*, pron. *lgun*, *wgun*; былъ = *he was*, pron. *byl*, very much like the English word *bill*, or *byw*, *biww*; была́ = *she was*, pron. *bylá*, or *bywá* (*y* here having the sound of *y* in *Whitby*).

Before a soft (palatal) vowel, on the other hand, л is pronounced like Italian *gl* in e. g. *degli*, or like Spanish *ll* in e. g. *llama*, i. e. it is palatal, formed by pressing the whole front part of the tongue against the palate. E. g. лёдъ = *ice*, pron. *lyot*; ли́па = *lime-tree*, pron. *lyípa*; лью = *I pour*, pron. *lyu*; лю́ди = *people*, pron. *lyúdyi*. Final ль is rather difficult for Englishmen to pronounce, but the throwing-back of the *i*-sound, contained in the ь, on to the preceding vowel is very marked and makes it easier, e. g. боль = *pain*, pron. very much like *boil*, but giving the л the value of Italian *gl*. Ль followed by other consonants is still more difficult to pronounce, but it is made easier by running the preceding syllable right into it, e. g. на льду́ = *on the ice*, is pronounced approximately *naildú*, *ai* having the value of *ai* in *Cairo*, нельзя́ = *it is impossible*, pron. *nyalezyá* in two syllables, *-yale-* like the American *Yale*, and л having the value of Italian *gl*. Л followed by a consonant and a palatal vowel is also pronounced like Italian *gl*, e. g. лже-проро́къ = *false prophet*, pron. *lzheprarók*. Foreign names ending in *l* are written in Russian with final ль, e. g. Брюссель = *Brussels*, but foreign words which are regarded as having become Russian are written with лъ, e. g. капита́лъ = *capital* (sc. money).

The form of this letter is derived from the Greek.

§ 23. **М м** = *m*

is pronounced as in English. Final мь is difficult to pronounce; it is of course softened, just as *m* in the English word *mew*, but in rapid conversation this is scarcely noticeable. It is easier for foreigners to express palatalization by emphasizing the throwing-back of the *i*-sound, e. g. семь = *seven*, pron. *syame*, *syaim*, like the English words *same*, *aim*; во́семь = *eight*, pron. *vóisyame*, which in rapid conversation becomes *vóisim* or *vóisyem*. In the syllable ми the *y*-sound is very difficult to express after м, even for Russians, and is therefore inaudible, e. g. ми́мо = *past* (prep.), pron. *mima*.

§ 24. **Н н** = *n*

is pronounced as in English. The same applies to final нь as to final мь; the sound нь is, however, more familiar to Englishmen as

it is exactly the same as French and Italian *gn*, e. g. *Boulogne* is written in Russian Булонь. In Russian words ending in нь the palatalization is if anything more marked than in those with final мь, and the throwing-back of the *i*-sound is equally marked, e. g. конь = *steed*, is pronounced *koigne*, like *Boulogne*, though in rapid conversation it sounds like the English word *coin* pronounced very short, just as *Boulogne* spoken by many Englishmen sounds like *boo-loin*. In the syllable ни the *y*-sound must always be expressed, though it is difficult for Englishmen to do so, e. g. съ ни́ми = *with them*, is pronounced *snyími*, *-yi-* having the sound of the English word *ye*.

The Russian H is derived from the Greek N. The reason why it is in Russian written H is that while the middle stroke of our *N* has remained sloping, the middle stroke of the same letter in Russian has become horizontal; in Old Bulgarian the letter was written ⟨N⟩ and in Russian it has become H.

§ 25. **П п = *p***

is pronounced as in English. Palatalized п, i. e. п before a palatal vowel, is pronounced simply *py-*, as in English *piano*, except in the syllable пи, where it is almost impossible to express the *y*-sound, e. g. перо́ = *pen*, pron. like the French word *Pierrot*, but пилъ = *he drank*, pron. like the English word *peel*. Final пь is very rare; it is difficult for an Englishman to express the ь, but its effect on the preceding vowel is obvious, e. g. цѣпь = *chain*, pron. *tsyape* (one syllable), *-ape* as in English *tape*, but цѣпъ = *flail*, pron. *tsyep*, as in English *tepid*.

The form of this letter is derived from the Greek.

§ 26. **Р р = *r***

is pronounced as in Scotland; it is always rolled with the tip of the tongue, and never under any circumstances pronounced as in English or German. Exactly the same applies to palatalized р and to ри as to palatalized п and пи, e. g. Рязáнь = *Ryazan*, pron. *Ryazagne* (*-gne* as in French); but Рига = *Riga*, *ri-* as in English *reel*, but rolling the *r*. Medial and final рь is difficult to pronounce, but is made easier by the marked throwing-back of the *i*-sound, e. g. царь = *tsar'*, pron. *tsair*, rolling the *r* (*ai* as in Cairo), Хáрьковъ = *Harkov*, pron. *Hairkaf* (*ai* again as in Cairo), ерь = the name of the letter ь, pron. *yair*, rolling the *r* (*ai* as in the English word *aim*),

but еръ = the name of the letter ъ, pron. *yare*, rolling the *r* (like the English word *fare*).

The form of this letter is derived from the Greek.

§ 27. **С с = *s***

is pronounced *always* like English voiceless *s* in e. g. *second*. Palatalized с is simply *s* + the *y*-sound, which latter is, however, inaudible in the syllable си, e. g. се́мя = *seed*, pron. *syémya*, but си́ла = *strength*, pron. *síla* or *síwa* ; сижу́ = *I sit*, pron. *sizhú*. The same applies to medial and final сь as to рь and пь, e. g. мо́ська = *pug*, pron. *móiska*, *oi* as in the English word *moist*, though the throwing-back of the *i*-sound is not always so easy, e. g. Русь = the old name of Russia, pron. *Rúis*, in one syllable, *u* as *oo* in English, with a slight *i*-sound between the *u* and *s*, which gives the *s* a somewhat minced or affected character. After a palatal vowel the effect of final ь is only noticeable in the attenuation of the *s*, e. g. боюсь = *I fear* (where -сь is the reflexive pronoun), pron. *bayús* ; мо́юсь = *I wash myself*, pron. *móyus* ; in these cases the *y*-sound after the final с is distinctly audible, but very difficult for foreigners to reproduce.

The form of this letter is derived from the Greek.

§ 28. **Т т = *t***

The pronunciation of т, as of д (q. v.), is particularly affected by the quality of the subsequent vowel. Initial and medial т before a hard vowel, also initial and medial т+в, к, л, м, н, р, also final -ть, is very frequently, i. e. in the pronunciation of many people, strictly *inter-dental*, i. e. the tongue while forming the sound touches both the upper and lower teeth, or at any rate it is dental, i. e. the tongue touches the tops of the upper teeth, and not cerebral as in English. As in the case of д, most foreigners will find that it is easier to give their full value to the hard vowels after a dental, than after a cerebral т ; it is also far easier to roll the *r* after dental than after cerebral д and т, e. g. три = *three*, must on no account be pronounced like the English word *tree*, but like our *three* without *h* and rolling the *r*.

Initial and medial т before a palatal vowel is, on the other hand, not inter-dental or dental, but strongly palatalized, i. e. pronounced like *ty* in e. g. *let you*, e. g. тѣ́ло = *body*, pron. *tyélo* or *tyéwo* ; итти́ = *to go* (*on foot*), pron. *ityí* ; тебѣ́ = *to thee*, pron. *tyebyé* ; тѣ́мно = *dark*, (adv.), pron. *tyómna*.

Initial or medial т followed by ь + a consonant is difficult to pronounce, e. g. тьма = *darkness*, is only one syllable, pron. *tymá*. Final ть is pronounced in the same way and is if anything more difficult for most beginners; it is of very common occurrence, as it is the ordinary infinitival ending, e. g. говори́ть = *to speak*, pron. *gavarítу*, in three syllables, the *y* of course not forming a syllable, but merely palatalizing the т. This is very important, as mispronunciation alters the meaning of the word, e. g. говоритъ (hard) = *he speaks* (3rd sing.), pron. *gavarítt*.

The pronunciation of final дь and ть is made more difficult by the fact that there is not with them, as with final ль, рь, &c., any throwing-back of the *i*-sound on to the preceding vowel, e. g. дѣ́лать = *to do*, must *not* be pronounced *dyélait* but *dyélaty* or *dyéwaty* (in two syllables with palatalized *t*); мать = *mother*, pron. *maty* in one syllable with palatalized *t*. For Englishmen in particular it is important to remember that final ть is neither *t* nor *ts* nor *ch*, but palatalized, just as it is in the English word *actual*; the difficulty is to pronounce the palatalized *t* at the end of a word with no vowel following and without letting it form an extra syllable.

The form of this letter is derived from the Greek; the italic form *т* (and that of the written capital) is the result of the gradual lengthening downwards of the two ends of the bar across the top of the letter т т.

§ 29. **Ф ф** = *f*

is pronounced as in English, and occurs only in words of foreign origin, e. g. фото́графъ = *photographer*, pron. *fatógraf*.

This letter is derived directly from the Greek.

§ 30. **Х х** = *kh*

is pronounced like *ch* in Scotch or German *loch* by some, but by others more like the English aspirate *h*. Х cannot be followed by ы (which it turns into и) nor by ь. It is always used to render the Greek χ (from which it is derived), e. g. археоло́гія = *archaeology*.

§ 31. **Ц ц** = *ts*

is pronounced as in English *lots*, e. g. Цари́цынъ (lit. *Tsaritsa's* or *Empress's*), a town on the Volga, pron. *Tsarítsyn*; Ца́рское Село́

(lit. *Tsar's* or *Emperor's village*), a town near Petrograd, pron. *Tsárskoye Syeló*. It is also used to render the Latin *c* before *e*, *i*, and *ae*, e. g. Цицеро́нъ = *Cicero*, Ци́езарь = *Caesar*.

The form of the letter is of unknown origin.

§ 32. **Ч ч** = *ch*

is pronounced as in English *church*, except that it is a palatal consonant, whereas ours is not. The result of this is that there is a tendency to pronounce even the hard vowels when they follow ч as if they were palatal, though orthography forbids the use of я and ю after ч; in practice this palatal pronunciation of the hard vowels is only noticeable when the latter are accented, e. g. чу́до = *wonder, miracle*, is pronounced almost as if it were чю́до, but in the plural чудеса́ the *y*-sound is not audible. ы cannot stand after ч, and it is important to remember that и after ч is pronounced like the *ee* in *cheese*, not like the *i* in *chill*, e. g. in the word чи́сто = *clean* (N., sing. and adverb). е (ѣ) after ч is pronounced *ye* if accented, e. g. Че́ховъ (the dramatic author), pron. *Chyékhof*, but when unaccented the *y*-sound is scarcely audible (cf. § 11). ь after final ч has the effect on preceding vowels already described in § 14.

The form of this letter is of Semitic origin.

§ 33. **Ш ш** = *sh*

is pronounced as in the word *English*. ы cannot stand after ш, which turns it into и. For the pronunciation of е, и, and ё after ш cf. §§ 11, 12. ь after final ш has the effect on preceding vowels already described in § 14, but it is important to remember that the 2nd sing. of the presents of all verbs which without exception ends in -шь is always pronounced as if it were written -шъ.

The form of this letter is of Semitic origin.

§ 34. **Щ щ** = *shch*

is broadly speaking pronounced as in *Ashchurch*, but it is to be noticed that it is pronounced in various ways by various people. By many it is pronounced *shch* as described, but by many others like a very emphatic *sh* with a palatal quality; thus the word щи = *cabbage-soup* (a national dish) is by some pronounced *shchi* (*i* as in *cheese*), by others *shyi* (in one syllable, the *i* as in *cheese*).

Being a compound of ш and ч it is made palatal by the palatal quality inherent in ч, and thus all vowels are pronounced after it as they are after ч, cf. § 32. ы cannot stand after щ, which turns it into и. ъ after final щ has the effect on preceding vowels already described in § 14.

The form of this letter in Old Bulgarian was ѿ, that is to say a ш superimposed on a т, and in that language it had the value of *sht*, which it still retains in Modern Bulgarian.

§ 35. Ѳ ѳ = *f*

is the Greek *θ* and is called in Russian ѳита́ (pron. *fitá*). It is only used in words and names of Greek origin, e.g. Ѳома́ = *Thomas*, pron. *Famá*; Ѳеодо́сія = *Theodosia* (a town in the Crimea, pron. *Feodósia*).

The Greek *ξ* is represented in Russian by кс, e. g. Алексáндръ = *Alexander*, аксіóма = *axiom*.

PHONETIC TRANSCRIPTION

§ 36. In the foregoing, §§ 4–35, the ordinary English letters only have been used to render the pronunciation of the Russian vowels and consonants. This has been done for the sake of general utility, but it must be understood that such a method of transcription is not only unscientific but also only approximately accurate. Appended is a list of the Russian sounds already enumerated and described together with their approximate equivalents in the signs currently used for phonetic spelling in England for the benefit of those students who are acquainted with the latter; needless to say that in a work of this size neither the list of Russian sounds nor that of their equivalents can pretend to include all the variations of pronunciation which occur, variations which are largely conditioned by the varying rates of spoken speech.

Russian letter.		*Phonetic transcription.*
а	{followed by hard vowel or final}	ɑ
,,	{followed by a palatal vowel or by ь}	a

Russian letter.		*Phonetic transcription.*
а	when pronounced like the obscure vowel in English	ə
э	followed by a hard vowel	ɛ
„	followed by a palatal vowel	e
ы		ɪ
о	when accented	ɔ
„	when unaccented	ə
у		u
я		jɑ or ja
е (ѣ)		jɛ or je
и		i or ji
ё		jɔ (after ж, ч, ш, щ = ɔ)
ю		ju
ь		'
б		b
в		v
г		g
д		d
ж		ʒ
з		z
к		k
л		l
м		m
н		n
п		p
р		r
с		s
т		t
ф		f
х		x
ц		ts
ч		tʃ'
ш		ʃ
щ		ʃ't'ʃ' or ʃtʃ' or ʃ'
ѳ		f

THE ACCENT

§ 37. As has already been remarked, the accent in Russian is mobile, i. e. it may fall on any syllable. There are certain rules which govern it in certain cases, but their value is discounted by the existence of numerous exceptions. Correct accentuation is one of the greatest difficulties that Russian presents to the foreigner, as a misplaced accent may lead to disconcerting errors; at the best a foreigner who puts the accent on the wrong syllable will merely not be understood at all. The difficulty is increased by the fact that neither in writing nor in print is the accent marked, and in addition by the fact that in many cases words, though spelt identically, have quite different meanings according to where the accent is placed, e. g. мука́ = *flour*, but му́ка = *torment*; плачу́ = *I pay*, but пла́чу = *I weep*; во́ды = *waters* (nom. pl.), but воды́ = *some water* (gen. sing.), and many others.

Although the Russians talk much more musically than the English, the Russian accent is not a musical, but a stress accent. The accented syllable is always very strongly emphasized (in contrast to French), and the unaccented syllables consequently lose in some cases the full value of their vowels, e. g. unaccented o is always pronounced *a* (like our *u* in *but*), e. g. доро́га = *road*, pron. *daróga*; unaccented я like *i* or *e*, e. g. пятьдеся́ть = *fifty* (lit. *cinq dizaines*), pron. *pidyesyát*. It should be mentioned that in a number of cases the same word is often accented differently by different but equally well educated Russians, e.g. тёмно and темно́ = *dark* (adv.), и́наче and ина́че = *otherwise*, воро́та and ворота́ = *gateway*, and also that the accent is often withdrawn altogether from the noun by a preposition governing it, e.g. за́ руку = *by the hand* (ру́ку = acc. sing. of рука́ = *hand*), на́ голову = *on the head* (sc. *on to*; го́лову = acc. sing. of голова́ = *head*, во́-время = *in good time* (the hyphen is used to distinguish it from во вре́мя + gen. = *during* . . .), and sometimes from the past tense of a verb by the negative particle, e. g. не́ быль, не́ было = *was not*, не́ дать = *did not give*, though such cases both as regards nouns and verbs are the exception rather than the rule.

Failing the help *viva voce* of a competent teacher, beginners are recommended to read only accented texts, of which many have been published, in order to get used to the accent and also to read poetry, where the position of the accent is always indicated by the metre.

A list of accented texts published is given in the bibliography at the beginning of this book. By observing carefully the accents on the most commonly used cases and parts of the most commonly used nouns, verbs, &c., the student will learn where to place the accent far more quickly than by learning rules and exceptions which always contain forms that are rarely used. The accent is invariably marked in all dictionaries, even in those Russian dictionaries printed in Russia for the exclusive use of Russians, but in Russian grammars printed in Russia it is usually omitted.

THE DECLENSION OF THE SUBSTANTIVES

§ 38. There are three genders in Russian—Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter; and two numbers—Singular and Plural, though traces of the Dual are numerous in the declensions.

There is no definite or indefinite article in Russian corresponding to our *the*, *a*, *an*. The context is usually sufficient to indicate which is meant, whether *the* or *a*; otherwise recourse must be had to the demonstrative or indefinite pronouns. The demonstrative pronoun is sometimes used as a definite article after the noun which it qualifies, though only in the colloquial language (cf. § 48).

There are six cases in Russian, viz. *Nominative*, *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accusative*, *Instrumental*, and *Locative*. This last is sometimes called the *Prepositional*, because it is never used except after one of the five prepositions: о = *concerning*, въ = *in*, на = *on*, при = *in the presence of*, по = *after*. The *Instrumental* can be used without a preposition, when it denotes the instrument or agent by means of which anything is done. It is also used after certain prepositions, and then loses the meaning which the name implies. For the remains of the *Vocative* in modern Russian cf. § 39, Obs. 9.

§ 39. Masculine Nouns having the Nom. Sing. in -ъ, -ь, -й.

Almost all masculines end in -ъ, -ь, or -й. All nouns which end in -ъ and -й are masculine.

All nouns which end in -ъ are called *hard*, those ending in -ь or -й *soft*; those case-endings of a hard noun which begin with a hard vowel, begin with a soft vowel if the noun is soft, otherwise they are similar for both hard and soft nouns.

A peculiarity of the masculine nouns is that in the case of animate things the acc. sing. is the same as the gen. sing., while in the case of inanimate things it is the same as the nom. sing.; this rule applies also to the plural.

Examples: (hard) столъ = *table*; наро́дъ = *people, nation*; (soft) царь = *tsar'*; оле́нь = *deer*; сара́й = *coach-house*.

	hard.		soft.	
		Singular.		
N.	столъ	наро́дъ	царь	оле́нь
G.	стола́	наро́да	царя́	оле́ня
D.	столу́	наро́ду	царю́	оле́ню
A.	столъ	наро́дъ	царя́	оле́ня
I.	столо́мъ	наро́домъ	царёмъ	оле́немъ
L.	столѣ́	наро́дѣ	царѣ́	оле́нѣ
		Plural.		
N.	столы́	наро́ды	цари́	оле́ни
G.	столо́въ	наро́довъ	царе́й	оле́ней
D.	стола́мъ	наро́дамъ	царя́мъ	оле́нямъ
A.	столы́	наро́ды	царе́й	оле́ней
I.	стола́ми	наро́дами	царя́ми	оле́нями
L.	стола́хъ	наро́дахъ	царя́хъ	оле́няхъ

	Singular. soft.	*Plural.*
N.	сара́й	сара́и
G.	сара́я	сара́евъ
D.	сара́ю	сара́имъ
A.	сара́й	сара́и
I.	сара́емъ	сара́ями
L.	сара́ѣ	сара́яхъ

Observations.

1. The acc. sing. and plur. of all masculine nouns is the same as the nom. sing. and plur. in the case of inanimate, and the same as the gen. sing. and plur. in the case of animate things: thus the acc. sing. of столъ is столъ, but of царь—царя́.

2. The masc. nouns in -ь have borrowed the ending of the gen. plur. -ей (e. g. царе́й) from another declension.

3. The nom. acc. pl. of all masc. nouns in -къ, -гъ, -хъ, -чъ, -щъ, -жъ, -шъ, end in -ки, -ги, -хи, -чи, -щи, -жи, -ши (i. e. take -и instead of -ы), because ы cannot stand after a guttural or after ч, щ, ж, or ш, e. g. ма́льчикъ = *boy*, nom. pl. ма́льчики; ножъ = *knife*, nom. pl. ножи́; ключъ = *key*, nom. pl. ключи́.

4. The inst. sing. and gen. plur. of all masc. nouns in -жъ, -чъ, -шъ, -щъ, end respectively in -емъ (-ёмъ if accented) and -ей, e. g. това́рищъ, = *companion*, inst. sing. това́рищемъ, gen. pl. това́рищей; ножъ = *knife*, inst. sing. ножёмъ (pron. *nazhóm*), gen. pl. ноже́й; ключъ = *key*, inst. sing. ключёмъ, gen. pl. ключе́й; экипа́жъ = *carriage*, inst. sing. экипа́жемъ, gen. pl. экипа́жей. All these nouns were originally soft and have only latterly become hard. In the same way the nouns ending in -цъ were originally soft; of these, those which have the last syllable accented have become hard throughout, e. g. оте́цъ = *father*, makes inst. sing. отцо́мъ and gen. plur. отцо́въ, but those which are not accented on the last syllable still make their inst. sing. in -емъ, and their gen. plur in -евъ, e. g. мѣ́сяцъ = *moon* or *month*, inst. sing. мѣ́сяцемъ and gen. plur. мѣ́сяцевъ.

5. A large number of words which contain e or o in the last syllable of the nom. sing. lose this vowel in the oblique cases when, while on the e or o in the nom., the accent afterwards passes to the case-ending, and sometimes also when the accent throughout is on the first syllable; the emphasis on the accented syllable is so strong that the weak vowel of the unaccented syllable disappears, e. g. оте́цъ = *father*, gen. sing. отца́, dat. sing. отцу́, nom. pl. отцы́; за́мокъ = *castle*, за́мка; дворе́цъ = *palace*, gen. sing. дворца́; песо́къ = *sand*, песка́; кусо́къ = *piece*, кска́; день = *day*, gen. sing. дня. In those words containing ле-, i. e. soft л, e becomes ь to show that the л remains soft, e. g. лёдъ = *ice*, gen. sing. льда, but лобъ = *forehead*, gen. sing. лба, with hard л. The e is retained in cases where

its omission would cause an excessive accumulation of consonants, e. g. мертвéцъ = *corpse* makes gen. sing. мертвецá. A few words in -éй make gen. sing. in -ья, dat. in -ью, nom. pl. -ьи, &c.; e. g. ручéй = *stream*, gen. sing. ручья́, also воробéй = *sparrow*, муравéй = *ant*, and соловéй = *nightingale*, nom. pl. соловьи́, &c.

Words in -ёмъ make their gen. sing. in -йма, dat. sing. -йму, &c.; e. g. заёмъ = *loan*, gen. займа́; боéцъ = *fighter*, gen. бойцá, and зáяцъ = *hare*, by analogy, makes зáйца.

In other cases where the same process apparently occurs the e and o have merely been inserted in the nom. sing. to make pronunciation easier, e. g. вѣ́теръ = *wind*, gen. sing. вѣ́тра; огóнь = *fire*, огня́; у́голъ = *corner*, угла́, у́голь = *coal*, у́гля.

6. Masculine nouns denoting divisible matter have a gen. sing. in -у (-ю) when the gen. is used in a partitive sense, e. g. фунтъ чáю = *a pound of tea*, from чай = *tea*; мáло народу́ = *few people* (lit. *little of people*), but мнѣ́ніе нарóда = *the opinion of the people*, though this gen. has become usual in a number of cases where there is no idea of partition, e. g. съ ви́ду = *by sight*, безъ тóлку = *without sense*, съ ни́зу = *from below*, съ вéрху = *from above*, óтъ роду = *from one's birth*, и́зъ дому = *out of the house* (or *home*).

7. Several nouns have a loc. sing. in -ý, always accented, which is used after the prepositions въ = *in* and на = *on*, e. g. въ садý = *in the garden*, на мостý = *on the bridge*, въ . . . годý = *in the year* . . ., въ лѣсý = *in the forest*, на берегý = *on the bank* (or *shore*), на лугý = *in the meadow*, на краю́ = *on the edge* (from край), въ углý = *in the corner* (nom. уголъ), на полý = *on the floor*, and others. Cf. § 68.

N.B. After the prepositions о (объ) = *about* and при = *near* the loc. in -ѣ is used.

8. Several nouns have a nom. pl. in -á, -я́, which is always accented. This is really the old nom. dual, but its use has extended from the dual to the plural; e. g. глазъ = *eye*, nom. pl. глазá; берегъ = *bank*, nom. pl. берегá = *the two banks of a river*, but also = *the shores of the ocean*; рогъ = *horn*, nom. pl. рогá; бокъ = *side*, nom. pl. бокá; also вéчеръ = *evening* has nom. pl. вечерá; домъ = *house*, домá; гóлосъ = *voice*, голосá; кóлоколъ = *bell*, колоколá; гóродъ = *town* makes городá; дóкторъ = *doctor*, докторá; профéссоръ = *professor*, профессорá; учи́тель = *teacher*, учителя́; вѣкъ = *age*, *century*, годъ = *year*, and край = *country* have both вѣ́ки and вѣкá, гóды and годá, кра́и and края́. A few have two forms of the

nom. pl. with different meanings: волосъ = *hair*, has волоса́ = *hairs*, and во́лосы = *hair* (coll.), *a head of hair*; о́бразъ = *form, species, manner*, has образа́ = *holy images*, and о́бразы = *forms*; хлѣбъ = *bread*, has хлѣба́ = *the crops*, and хлѣ́бы = *loaves*; цвѣтъ = *colour*, has цвѣта́ = *colours* and цвѣты́ = *flowers* (for the sing. the diminutive form цвѣто́къ is used, in the sense of a *single flower* or *blossom*); мѣхъ = (1) *bellows*, has nom. pl. мѣхи́, = (2) *fur*, has мѣха́ = *furs*. Several masculine nouns have a nom. pl. in -ья, which is really a feminine collective sing. in form, though used as a masculine nom. pl. Thus братъ = *brother* makes nom. pl. бра́тья; стулъ = *chair*, nom. pl. сту́лья; листъ = *leaf* or *sheet of paper* makes ли́стья = *leaves, leafage* (but regularly листы́ = *sheets of paper*); другъ = *friend*, nom. pl. друзья́; мужъ = *husband*, мужья́; зять = *brother-in-law* or *son-in-law*, зятья́; князь = *prince*, князья́. The last four make their gen. pl. in -ей, like царь, e. g. друзей, while бра́тья makes gen. pl. бра́тьевъ, стулъ—сту́льевъ, as do some other less common nom. plurals in -ья; all, however, from the dat. pl. onwards go alike, e. g. друзья́мъ, inst. pl. друзья́ми, loc. pl. друзья́хъ.

Сынъ = *son* has nom. pl. сыновья́, gen. pl. сынове́й, dat. pl. сыновья́мъ, &c. Сосѣдъ = *neighbour* and чёртъ = *devil* make their plural like царь throughout, nom. pl. сосѣди, gen. pl. сосѣдей, &c.

A number of masculine nouns in -инъ, denoting individuals, make nom. pl. in -е and in the gen. pl. have no ending: граждани́нъ = *citizen* makes nom. pl. гражда́не, gen. pl. гражда́нъ, from the dat. pl. onwards being regular, viz. гражда́намъ, &c.; англича́нинъ = *Englishman*, nom. pl. англича́не, gen. pl. англича́нъ. Thus also тата́ринъ = *Tartar*, nom. pl. тата́ре; болга́ринъ = *Bulgarian*, болга́ре; датча́нинъ = *Dane*, датча́не (also accented да́тчанинъ, да́тчане); москвити́нинъ = *citizen of Moscow*, москвити́не; ри́млянинъ = *Roman*, ри́мляне; славя́нинъ = *Slav*, славя́не; дворя́нинъ = *nobleman*, дворя́не; крестья́нинъ = *peasant*, крестья́не, and (not to be confused with the last, though of identical derivation) христіа́нинъ = *Christian*, nom. pl. христіа́не.

Господи́нъ = *Mr.*, makes nom. pl. господа́ = *Messieurs*, '*Gentlemen!*' (also '*Ladies and Gentlemen!*'), gen. pl. госпо́дъ, dat. pl. господа́мъ, &c. Хозя́инъ = *host, householder*, makes nom. pl. хозя́ева = (1) *hosts* and (2) *host and hostess*, gen. pl. хозя́евъ, dat. pl. хозя́евамъ, &c. Several regular masculine nom. plurals make

their gen. pl. without any ending, as the above; this is really the old gen. pl. of this declension, while the form termed 'regular' in -овъ, -евъ was borrowed from another declension. Thus во́лосы = *hair* (collective) makes gen. pl. воло́съ; разъ = *time, stroke, once*, gen. pl. разъ; солда́тъ = *soldier*, gen. pl. солда́тъ; глазъ = *eye*, gen. pl. глазъ; футъ = *foot* (measure), gen. pl. футъ; фунтъ = *pound* (measure), gen. pl. фунтъ; арши́нъ = *yard* (measure), gen. pl. арши́нъ, and most names of kinds of soldiers, e. g. gen. pl. гренаде́ръ, драгу́нъ, &c.

The gen. pl. of челове́къ = *human being*, the only case of the plural of this word which is used, is челове́къ, and it is only used after numerals, e. g. сто челове́къ = *a hundred people*.

9. Богъ = *God* has a voc. sing. Бо́же, otherwise it is declined regularly, like столъ, viz. Бо́га, &c. Госпо́дь = *Lord*, has a voc. sing. Го́споди, and though soft in the nom., is from the gen. sing. onwards declined like столъ, viz. Го́спода, &c. Христо́съ = *Christ*, is from the gen. sing. onwards declined like столъ, viz. Христа́, &c. The old voc. of оте́цъ = *father* occurs in the phrase О́тче нашъ = *Pater noster*.

§ 40. Feminine Nouns having the nom. sing. in -а, -я.

Almost all nouns ending in -а, -я are feminine. All those which end in -а are called *hard*, those ending in -я *soft*; those case-endings of a hard noun which begin with a hard vowel begin with a soft vowel if the noun is soft, otherwise they are similar for both hard and soft nouns.

As regards the accusative case, the acc. sing. of all nouns in -а, -я is quite different from the nom. sing., whether the thing be animate or inanimate. The acc. pl. of feminine nouns in -а, -я is the same as the nom. pl. in the case of inanimate, the same as the gen. pl. in the case of animate things. This is no doubt due to the influence of the masculine declension.

Examples: (hard) же́нщина = *woman*, сестра́ = *sister*.
(soft) земля́ = *land*, а́рмія = *army*.

Hard Soft

Singular.

N.	же́нщина	сестра́	земля́	а́рмія
G.	же́нщины	сестры́	земли́	а́рміи
D.	же́нщинѣ	сестрѣ́	землѣ́	а́рміи
A.	же́нщину	сестру́	зе́млю	а́рмію
I.	же́нщиной	сестро́й	землёй	а́ріей
L.	же́нщинѣ	сестрѣ́	землѣ́	а́рміи

Hard Soft

Plural.

N.	же́нщины	сёстры	зе́мли	а́рміи
G.	же́нщинъ	сестёръ	земе́ль	а́рмій
D.	же́нщинамъ	сестра́мъ	земля́мъ	а́рміямъ
A.	же́нщинъ	сестёръ	зе́мли	а́рміи
I.	же́нщинами	сестра́ми	землями	а́рміями
L.	же́нщинахъ	сестра́хъ	земля́хъ	а́рміяхъ

Observations.

1. The inst. sing. of fem. nouns in -а, -я has two forms, the short -ой, -ей and the long -ою, -ею. The latter is the older and is still often used in poetry when an additional syllable is required, but in the colloquial language the shorter form is almost always used.

2. The gen. pl. of all fem. nouns ending in a vowel + я, which case would end in ь if the last letter of the stem were a consonant, is always written with an й and is a diphthong, e. g. ше́я = *neck* makes gen. pl. шей, а́рмія = *army* makes а́рмій.

The gen. pl. of fem. nouns ending in -ья́ ends in -е́й; e. g. статья́ = *newspaper article*, gen. pl. стате́й. Дя́дя = *uncle* also has gen. pl. дя́дей, and судья́ = *judge*, gen. pl. су́дей (судья́ is otherwise declined just like земля́, viz. gen. sing. судьи́, nom. pl. су́дьи, &c.).

3. The dat. and loc. sing. of fem. nouns ending in -ія ends in -іи, e. g. а́рмія = *army*, dat. and loc. sing. а́рміи; рели́гія = *religion*, рели́гіи; Россія = *Russia*, Россіи; А́нглія = *England*, А́нгліи.

Many fem. Christian names are spelt in two ways in the nom. sing., either -ія or -ья; if spelt in the former way, the dat. and loc. sing. ends in -іи; if in the latter, then in -ьѣ: e. g. Со́фія = *Sophia*, dat. and loc. sing. Со́фіи, but Со́фья, dat. and loc. sing. Со́фьѣ; the former spelling is preferable.

4. The gen. sing. and nom. acc. pl. of all fem. nouns in -ка, -га, -ха, -ча, -ща, -жа, -ша end in -ки, -ги, -хи, -чи, -щи, -жи, -ши because ы cannot stand after a guttural or after ч, щ, ж, or ш.

5. The inst. sing. of all fem. nouns ending in -ца, -ча, -ща, -жа, -ша ends in -о́й (sometimes written -ёй) if the accent falls on the ending, and in -ей if the accent falls on the root, e. g. Царица = *Tsaritsa* has inst. sing. царицей, but душа́ = *soul* has inst. sing. душо́й.

6. A number of words whose stems end in two consonants insert a vowel between these two consonants in the gen. pl. in order to facilitate their pronunciation; e. g. сестра́ = *sister* has gen. pl. сестёръ; ко́шка = *cat*—ко́шекъ; земля́ = *land*—земе́ль; дере́вня = *village*—деревень; ба́рышня = *young lady*—ба́рышень. A few such soft nouns become hard in the gen. pl., e. g. пѣсня = *song*, gen. pl. пѣсенъ; ба́сня = *fable*—ба́сенъ; ба́шня = *tower*—ба́шенъ. Nouns with ь in the stem lengthen this to е in the gen. pl., e. g. судьба́ = *fate*, gen. pl. суде́бъ; those with й in the stem likewise, e. g. копе́йка = *kopek* (the coin), gen. pl. копе́къ (also spelt копѣйка, копѣекъ).

7. It is to be noted that there are a few masculine nouns and a number of names (mostly diminutives) ending in -а and -я and declined like feminine nouns: слуга́ = *male servant*,[1] ю́ноша = *youth*, дя́дя = *uncle*, судья́ = *judge*, уби́ца = *murderer*, пья́ница = *drunkard*. Алёша = diminutive of Алексѣ́й = *Alexis*; Ва́ня = dim. of Ива́нъ = *John*; Воло́дя = dim. of Влади́міръ = *Vladimir*; Ко́ля = dim. of Никола́й = *Nicholas*; Ми́ша = dim. of Миха́йлъ = *Michael*; Пе́тя = dim. of Пётръ = *Peter*; Са́ша = dim. of Алекса́ндръ = *Alexander*; Серёжа = dim. of Сергѣ́й = *Sergius*, and many others; notice also the name Илья́ = *Elias*.

§ 41. Neuter Nouns having the nom. sing. in -о, -е.

Almost all neuter nouns end in -о or -е. All nouns which end in -о or -е are neuter.

All nouns which end in -о are called *hard*, those ending in -е *soft*.

Examples: (hard) село́ = *village*.

(soft) { мо́ре = *sea*. / имѣ́ніе = *property* (sc. *land*).

Hard Soft.

	Singular.	
N.	село́	мо́ре	имѣ́ніе
G.	села́	мо́ря	имѣ́нія
D.	селу́	мо́рю	имѣ́нію
A.	село́	мо́ре	имѣ́ніе
I.	село́мъ	мо́ремъ	имѣ́ніемъ
L.	селѣ́	мо́рѣ	имѣ́ніи

[1] N.B. прислу́га = *a male* or *female servant* is feminine.

		Plural.	
N.	сёла	моря́	имѣ́нія
G.	сёлъ	море́й	имѣ́ній
D.	сёламъ	моря́мъ	имѣ́ніямъ
A.	сёла	моря́	имѣ́нія
I.	сёлами	моря́ми	имѣ́ніями
L.	сёлахъ	моря́хъ	имѣ́ніяхъ

Observations.

1. The neuter nouns in -е have borrowed the ending of the gen. pl. -ей (e. g. море́й) from another declension.

Nouns in -ье as a rule make their gen. pl. in -ей, e. g. ружьё = *gun*, gen. pl. ружей, but пла́тье = *dress* or *suit*, makes пла́тьевъ, and ку́шанье = *dish* (sc. *the food*)—ку́шаньевъ.

Abstract nouns in -ie can also be spelt -ье, e. g. жела́ніе or жела́нье = *wish*; in the former case they are declined like имѣ́ніе and in the latter like мо́ре.

2. Neuter nouns in -че, -ще, -же, -ше, -це follow the hard declension, but make their inst. sing. in -емъ, e. g. учи́лище = *school*, inst. sing. учи́лищемъ, but gen. sing. учи́лища, gen. pl. учи́лищъ.

3. A number of hard neuter nouns whose stems end in two consonants insert a vowel between these two consonants in the gen. pl. in order to facilitate their pronunciation, e. g. окно́ = *window*, gen. pl. о́конъ; письмо́ = *letter*—пи́семъ.

Яйцо́ = *egg* makes gen. pl. яи́цъ, = two syllables, while the nom. pl. is я́йца.

4. A number of neuter nouns have unexpected forms in the pl., thus я́блоко = *apple*, nom. pl. я́блоки, gen. pl. я́блокъ; плечо́ = *shoulder*, nom. pl. плеча́, gen. pl. плечъ; колѣ́но = *knee*, nom. pl. колѣ́ни, gen. pl. колѣ́ней; у́хо = *ear* makes у́ши, ушей́, о́ко = *eye* (poetic)—о́чи, очей́; in the dat., inst., and loc. pl. these all follow село́, e. g. inst. pl. я́блоками, уша́ми, плеча́ми (the endings in -и are relics of the old neuter dual, the eyes, ears, and shoulders being naturally mentioned in the dual oftener than in the plural). Не́бо = *heaven* makes nom. pl. небеса́, gen. pl. небе́съ; чудо = *miracle*—чудеса́, чуде́съ, dat. pl. небеса́мъ, чудеса́мъ, &c.

Де́рево = *tree* makes nom. pl. дере́вья, gen. pl. дере́вьевъ, dat. pl. дере́вьямъ, &c.; перо́ = *feather*, *pen*—пе́рья,—пе́рьевъ, &c.; крыло́

= *wing*—кры́лья, &c. There is a whole category of words which are neuter in the pl. and masculine in the sing.; these are all names of young living things, e.g. ребя́та = *children*, (gen. pl. ребя́тъ), ребёнокъ = *child*; щеня́та = *puppies*, sing. щено́къ; цыпля́та = *young fowls*, sing. цыплёнокъ; жеребя́та = *foals*, sing. жеребёнокъ; теля́та = *calves*, sing. телёнокъ; порося́та = *sucking-pigs*, sing. поросёнокъ; котя́та = *kittens*, sing. котёнокъ; all these words *in the sing.* come under obs. 5, § 39, i.e. gen. acc. sing. ребёнка, &c.[1]

§ 42. Feminine Nouns having the nom. sing. in -ь.

A number of fem. nouns, especially abstract nouns derived from adjectives, such as ра́дость = *joy*, from радъ = *glad*, end in -ь in the nom. and acc. sing. and form a distinct class, sometimes called the *i*-declension.

Example: ло́шадь = *horse*.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N.	ло́шадь	ло́шади
G.	ло́шади	лошаде́й
D.	ло́шади	лошадя́мъ
A.	ло́шадь	лошаде́й
I.	ло́шадью	лошадьми́
L.	ло́шади	лошадя́хъ

Observations.

1. The acc. pl. of names of animate things is the same as the gen. pl.; e.g. nom. pl. ло́шади = *horses*, gen. and acc. pl. лошаде́й; nom. pl. лю́ди = *people, men and women* (which is used as the plural of челове́къ, cf. p. 49; the singular of лю́ди is людь, a hard masculine noun, and means *a people*), gen. and acc. pl. люде́й, but кость = *bone*, gen. pl. косте́й, acc. pl. ко́сти. The gen. pl. -ей of this declension is that borrowed by soft masc. and neuter nouns, cf. pp. 46, 52.

2. The regular inst. pl. of this declension, -ьми, has become replaced by that in -ями, borrowed from the soft fem. declension, in all words except the following: лошадь = *horse*, inst. pl. лошадьми́, лю́ди = *people*—людьми́; кость = *bone*—костьми́; дверь = *door*—дверьми́; де́ти = *children*—де́тьми́; but ра́дость = *joy*—радостя́ми; ско́рость = *speed*—скоростя́ми; страсть = *passion*—страстя́ми; са́ни (pl. only) = *sledge*—саня́ми; часть = *part*—частя́ми.

[1] О́блако = *cloud* has gen. pl. облако́въ.

3. Those nouns which end in -чь, -щь, -жь, and -шь, and це́рковь = *church* (cf. the following paragraph) have the dat. pl. in -амъ, the inst. pl. in -ами, and the loc. pl. in -ахъ; e. g. ночь = *night*—ночáмъ, ночáми, ночáхъ; вещь = *thing*—вещáмъ, вещáми, вещáхъ; це́рковь—церквáмъ, церквáми, церквáхъ.

4. The five nouns це́рковь = *church*, любóвь = *love*, рожь = *rye*, ложь = *lie*, and вошь = *louse* lose the o in all the oblique cases except in the inst. sing. Thus, gen. sing. це́ркви, любви́, ржи, &c., but inst. sing. це́рковью, любóвью. When, however, Любóвь is used as a Christian name, = *Love*, then it retains the o; gen. sing. Любóви, &c.

5. There is only one masc. noun in this declension: путь = *way*, (= *road* and *means*); it is declined exactly like лóшадь except that the inst. sing. is путёмъ and the inst. pl. путя́ми.

6. The noun сáжень = *seven feet* (measure) has gen. dat. sing. сажéни and gen. pl. сáженъ.

7. The two nouns мать = *mother*, and дочь = *daughter* are declined as follows:

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N.	мать	мáтери
G.	мáтери	матерéй
D.	мáтери	матеря́мъ
A.	мать	матерéй
I.	мáтерью	матеря́ми
L.	мáтери	матеря́хъ

The inst. pl. матерьмú, дочерьмú are also used. In the colloquial language the use of мать and дочь is often replaced by that of the diminutives мáтушка (or мамáша) and дóчка, which follow the ordinary fem. declension.

8. It is important to remember that the very common plurals лю́ди = *people* and дéти = *children*, are declined like the plural of лóшадь.

§ 43. Neuter Nouns having the nom. sing. in -я.

A few neuter nouns end in -я in the nom. and acc. sing. and form a distinct class, sometimes called the *n*-declension.

Example: врéмя = *time*.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N.	вре́мя	времена́
G.	вре́мени	времёнъ
D.	вре́мени	временáмъ
A.	вре́мя	времена́
I.	вре́менемъ	временáми
L.	вре́мени	временáхъ

Other common words in this declension are: и́мя = (*Christian*) *name*, плéмя = *tribe*, плáмя = *flame*, брéмя = *burden*, and сéмя = *seed* (which has an irregular gen. pl. сéмя́нъ), знáмя = *standard*, стрéмя = *stirrup* (gen. pl. стремя́нъ).

The word дитя́ = *child*, which is neuter, is declined in the singular as follows:

N.	дитя́
G.	дитя́ти
D.	дитя́ти
A.	дитя́
I.	дитя́тей
L.	дитя́ти

The plural дéти goes like лóшади q. v.; in the colloquial language the alternative word for *child*, ребёнокъ (cf. p. 53), is more commonly used for the singular, *child*, and дéти more commonly for the plural, *children*.

The oblique cases of дитя́ are very seldom used except in literature, and the plural of ребёнокъ, ребя́та, is specially used in the meaning *comrades, boys*, e. g. among soldiers, though also commonly used for *children* by the peasants.

§ 44. Note on the Terminations of Substantives.

All nouns ending in -ъ, -й are masculine.

„ „ „ -о, -е are neuter.

Nouns „ „ -ь are either masculine or feminine, e.g. царь = *tsar'*, masc., but óсень = *autumn*, fem.

Most nouns ending in -а, -я are feminine, but a few are masculine and neuter, e.g. слугá = (*man-*)*servant*, судья́ = *judge*, masc., и́мя = (*Christian*) *name*, neut.

Common terminations denoting male and female agents are: masc. -икъ, -ель, -ецъ, -инъ, -унъ; fem. -ица, -иха, -ка, -унья, and others, e. g.:

Masculine.	*Feminine.*
прика́щикъ *salesman*	прика́щица
учени́къ *pupil*	учени́ца
учи́тель *teacher*	учи́тельница
пѣве́цъ *singer*	пѣви́ца
саме́цъ *male* (sc. *beast*)	са́мка *female* (sc. *beast*)
купе́цъ *merchant*	купчи́ха (*his wife*)
генера́лъ *general*	генера́льша (*his wife*)
господи́нъ *Mr., gentleman*	госпожа́ *Mrs., lady*
граждани́нъ *citizen*	гражда́нка (fem.)
врунъ *liar*	вру́нья
госуда́рь *sir, sovereign*	госуда́рыня *lady, sovereign*
ба́ринъ *sir, master*	ба́рыня *lady, mistress*

Notice that молоде́цъ = *clever chap, brave fellow* (a very common word of praise), у́мница = *clever-boots,* другъ = *friend*, and человѣ́къ = *person*, can be used of either males or females. The feminine of врачъ = *doctor* is же́нщина врачъ = *woman doctor.*

Cf. also англича́нка = *Englishwoman* (for masc. v. p. 48), нѣ́мецъ, нѣ́мка = *German* (pl. нѣ́мцы, fem. нѣ́мки). Similarly америка́нецъ = *American*, венге́рецъ = *Hungarian*, голла́ндецъ = *Dutchman*, испа́нецъ = *Spaniard*, италія́нецъ = *Italian*, норве́жецъ = *Norwegian*, швейца́рецъ = *Swiss*, ирла́ндецъ = *Irishman*, and шотла́ндецъ = *Scot*, all turn -ецъ into -ка for the fem. and -цы, -ки for the pl., gen. pl. = -цевъ, -окъ ; португа́лецъ makes португа́лька, -льцы = *Portuguese* ; австрі́ецъ, австрі́йка, -і́йцы = *Austrian* ; бельгі́ецъ, -і́йка, -і́йцы = *Belgian* ; шведъ, шве́дка, шве́ды = *Swede* ; грекъ, грека́нка, гре́ки = *Greek* ; сербъ, сербія́нка, се́рбы = *Servian* ; ту́рокъ, турча́нка, ту́рки = *Turk* ; поля́къ, по́лька, поля́ки = *Pole* ; чехъ, че́шка, че́хи = *Bohemian*, and францу́зъ, францу́женка, францу́зы = *French.*

§ 45. Diminutive Endings.

The extensive use of diminutives is one of the first things that strikes the beginner. Some words are only used in their diminutive forms, e. g. ма́льчикъ = *boy*, from which a further diminutive has had to be formed, viz. мальчи́шка = *little boy.* In many cases the diminutives are really meant to imply smallness, but very frequently they are used merely as a means of expressing affection, politeness, or good humour, and in such they are difficult, if not

impossible to translate in English. E. g. the conductor in a train always asks to see your биле́тики = *little tickets*; this does not imply that the tickets are small, but merely that the conductor would not refuse a drink.

The commonest diminutive endings are:

Masculine.

-икъ,	e. g.	ма́льчикъ	= *boy*
-ишка,	„	мальчи́шка	= *little boy*
-екъ,	„	внучекъ	= *grandson*
-ёкъ,	„	звѣрёкъ	= *animal*
-окъ,	„	дружо́къ	= *friend*
-ецъ	„	бра́тецъ	= *brother*
-ёнокъ,	„	котёнокъ	= *kitten* (cf. § 41, obs. 4)
-ичъ,	„	Петро́вичъ	= *son of Peter*[1]

Feminine.

-ка,	„	дѣ́вочка	= *girl* (till puberty)
-на,	„	Петро́вна	= *daughter of Peter*[1]
-ца,	„	части́ца	= *part*

Neuter.

-ко,	„	о́блачко	= *cloud*
-цо,	„	письмецо́	= *letter*
-це,	„	око́нце	= *window*

As an example of the varieties of diminutives that can be formed from one word, take the word дѣ́ва = *virgin* (only used in such expressions as the 'Maid of Orleans', or ста́рая дѣ́ва = *an old maid*):

дѣви́ца = *spinster.*
дѣ́вка = *girl* (sc. *common girl, wench*, a very derogatory term).
дѣ́вочка = *girl* (up to 12).
дѣвушка = *girl* (from 12 till marriage, or till about 30).
дѣвчо́нка = *little girl.*

---

[1] Literally = *Peter's little one*; Петро́въ (masc.) and Петро́ва (fem.) are possessive adjectives formed from the word Пётръ = *Peter*, and to the stem Петров- are added -ичъ for the son and -на for the daughter. All other patronymics are formed analogously. Patronymics are often contracted in rapid conversation, e. g. Иа́нычъ for Ива́новичъ, &c.; Ма́рія Ива́новна sounds like Маріи́нна.

The following terminations imply good humour or affection specifically:

-ушка, -юшка, -ышко, -енька, -енка.

The following terminations are considered to imply depreciation:

-ишка, -ишко, -ёнка, -онка and sometimes -ушка.

The following are called augmentatives, as they usually imply largeness:

-ина, -ище, -ища.

THE DECLENSION OF THE PRONOUNS

§ **46.** The inflexions of these are for the most part different from those of the substantives, though there are a few points of similarity, e.g. the dat. pl. always ends in -мъ and the inst. pl. always in -ми.

Personal Pronouns.

Я = *I*, ты = *thou*, онъ = *he*, она́ = *she*, оно́ = *it*, мы = *we*, вы = *you*, они́, онѣ́ = *they*.

Singular.

N.	я	ты	онъ (neut. оно́)	она́
G.	меня́	тебя́	его́	ея́
D.	мнѣ́	тебѣ́	ему́	ей
A.	меня́	тебя́	его́	ее́
I.	мной	тобо́й	имъ	ей
L.	мнѣ́	тебѣ́	(н)ёмъ	(н)ей

Plural.

N.	мы	вы	они́ (masc. and neut.), онѣ́ (fem.)
G.	насъ	васъ	ихъ
D.	намъ	вамъ	имъ
A.	насъ	васъ	ихъ
I.	на́ми	ва́ми	и́ми
L.	насъ	васъ	(н)ихъ

Observations.

1. There is a reflexive personal pronoun, себя́, which has no nominative, and is declined alike in the sing. and pl.:

G. себя́
D. себѣ́
A. себя́
I. собо́й
L. себѣ́

i. e. just like тебя́.

The peculiarity of its use is that it can be applied to any of the three persons; e. g. я люблю́ себя́ = *I love myself*, ты лю́бишь себя́ = *thou lovest thyself*; онъ or она́ лю́бить себя́ = *he* or *she loves him-* or *herself*. It also occurs in a few very common idioms; e. g. такъ себѣ́ = *fairly, averagely* (lit. = *thus to itself*); само́ собо́ю разумѣется = *that is understood* (lit. = *itself understands itself by itself*); она́ хороша́ собо́й = *she is a good-looking woman* (lit. *she* [*is*] *nice with herself*); онъ живётъ себѣ́ тамъ . . . = *he goes on living there* (here the себѣ́ implies that he goes on living in his own way, paying little attention to others, but not necessarily that he is a recluse); онъ слома́лъ себѣ́ го́лову = *he has cracked his head*, the Russian equivalent for *he has broken his neck*.

When joined to an ordinary transitive verb (making it reflexive) себя́ is contracted to -ся or -сь; e. g. разумѣется = *of course* (lit. = *it understands itself*), э́то не дѣ́лается = *that is not done*; нахожу́сь = *I find myself*. But the addition of the reflexive pronoun by no means always makes the word passive; Russian has many reflexive verbs which are middle in meaning, e. g. боя́ться = *to fear*, боюсь = *I fear*; нра́вится = *it pleases*, мнѣ нра́вится = *it pleases me, I like*. Cf. §§ 100, 110.

2. The nominatives онъ, она́, оно́, они́, онѣ́ did not belong originally to его́, &c., and are not really personal pronouns at all, but demonstrative pronouns, corresponding somewhat to the German *jener, jene, jenes*, which in Russian, no longer used regularly as demonstrative pronouns, have been borrowed to supply the place of the lost nominatives of его, &c.

3. It is important to notice that the acc. sing. of онъ and of оно́ is always его́, i. e. = the gen. sing., even though the thing to which it refers be inanimate. Similarly the acc. pl. of они́ and of онѣ́ is always ихъ.

4. The initial и- in имъ, ихъ, and ими is always pronounced *yi-*.

5. The gen. sing. of она́ is usually pronounced *yeyó*, i. e. like the acc. sing. её, though it is always written ея.

6. The genitives of the personal pronoun его́, ей, and ихъ ordinarily mean *his*, *her*, and *their*, since Russian has no possessive pronoun of the third person, e. g. the only way of saying *his father* in Russian is его́ оте́цъ (or оте́цъ его́).

7. The oblique cases of онъ, она́, and они́, when directly governed by a preposition, are always prefixed by the letter н; this is ostensibly done for the sake of euphony, but the real reason is that certain prepositions originally ended in н, and this letter was borrowed by other prepositions which did not end in it. Subsequently when the prepositions lost their final н, it stuck to the pronoun where it has remained. As the loc. case in Russian is never used without a preposition of some sort, the loc. of this pronoun is always prefixed by н, placed in brackets in the paradigm for this reason. When a preposition precedes его, ея, or ихъ in their meaning of *his*, *her*, or *their*, and therefore does not directly govern the pronoun, the н is omitted.

Examples: съ нимъ = *with him*, отъ нихъ = *from them*, о нёмъ = *about him*, but отъ его́ отца́ = *from his father*, о его́ бра́тѣ = *about his brother*, &c.

8. For the inst. sing. мной, тобой, ей, and собой the full forms мно́ю, тобо́ю, е́ю, and собо́ю are often used.

9. In correspondence all cases of the pronoun вы are always spelt with an initial capital for politeness.

10. The particle же (or -жъ) is often affixed to the personal pronouns, and expresses identity or gives emphasis to the pronoun; e. g. я твой, братъ, я же и твой другъ = *I am thy brother, I too am thy friend*; кто вамъ далъ э́то? онъ—а э́то? онъ же = *who gave you this? he* [*did*]—*and this? he* [*did*] *too*. In book catalogues when the name of the author has once been printed, его́же printed in front of the titles of his various works means *by the same author*.

же can also mean *but* where a slight emphasis is laid on the pronoun; e. g. вы же сказа́ли это! = *but it was you* [*who*] *said this!*

11. The particle то affixed to the personal pronouns also expresses identity or gives emphasis.

§ 47. Possessive Pronouns.

The declension of these resembles that of онъ, мой, мо́й, моё; мои́ = *my, mine*; твой, твой, твоё; твои́ = *thy, thine*; свой, свой, своё;

свой = *one's own*; нашъ, на́ша, на́ше; на́ши = *our, ours*; вашъ, ва́ша, ва́ше: ва́ши = *your, yours.*

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc., Fem., Neut.
N.	мой	моя́	моё	мои́
G.	моего́	мое́й	моего́	мои́хъ
D.	моему́	мое́й	моему́	мои́мъ
A.	мой or моего́	мою́	моё	мои́ or мои́хъ
I.	мои́мъ	мое́й	мои́мъ	мои́ми
L.	моёмъ	мое́й	моёмъ	мои́хъ

	Singular.			*Plural.*
N.	на́шъ	на́ша	на́ше	на́ши
G.	на́шего	на́шей	на́шего	на́шихъ
D.	на́шему	на́шей	на́шему	на́шимъ
A.	= N. or G.	на́шу	на́ше	= N. or G.
I.	на́шимъ	на́шей	на́шимъ	на́шими
L.	на́шемъ	на́шей	на́шемъ	на́шихъ

OBSERVATIONS.

1. Твой and свой are declined exactly like мой, and вашъ exactly like нашъ.

2. Свой can only be used when it refers to the subject of the sentence, but it can be used of any of the three persons; e.g. я люблю́ своего́ отца́ can only mean *I love my father* (though it is also possible to say я люблю́ моего́ отца́), whereas я люблю́ его́ отца = *I love his father*. Again, онъ лю́битъ свою́ сестру́ = *he loves his* (*own*) *sister*, whereas онъ лю́битъ его́ сестру́ = *he loves his* (i.e. *some one else's*) *sister*.

3. The acc. sing. of the masc. and acc. pl. of all three genders of these pronouns follow the rule of the masculine substantives; i.e. when the object referred to is animate, the acc. = the gen., when inanimate it is the same as the nom.

4. For the inst. sing. мое́й, твое́й, свое́й, на́шей, and ва́шей, the full forms мое́ю, твое́ю, свое́ю, на́шею, and ва́шею are also used.

5. It is important to notice that the nom. pl. мой (also твой and свой) is a disyllable, pronounced *ma-yí*; the nom. sing. masc. мой (as also твой and свой), on the other hand, is a diphthong, the -й being the original nom. sing. of the personal pronoun of the 3rd person, which in that declension has been replaced by онъ, &c.

6. In correspondence all cases of the pronoun вашъ are spelt with an initial capital for politeness.

7. The particle же (or -жъ) affixed to the possessive pronouns expresses identity of ownership, e. g. чей э́тотъ домъ ? мой—а чьё э́то поле ? моё же = *whose is this house ? mine—and whose is this field ? mine also.*

8. The particle то emphasizes the pronouns; e. g.:

мой-то ? = *do you mean mine ?*

§ 48. Demonstrative Pronouns.

The declension of these is similar for the most part to that of the possessive pronouns, though differing from it in some important particulars.

тотъ, та, то ; тѣ = *that (yonder).*

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc., Fem., Neut.
N.	тотъ	та	то	тѣ
G.	того́	той	того́	тѣхъ
D.	тому́	той	тому́	тѣмъ
A.	=N. or G.	ту	то	= N. or G.
I.	тѣмъ	той	тѣмъ	тѣ́ми
L.	томъ	той	томъ	тѣхъ

э́тотъ, э́та, э́то ; э́ти = *this* or *that (here).*

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc., Fem., Neut.
N.	э́тотъ	э́та	э́то	э́ти
G.	э́того	э́той	э́того	э́тихъ
D.	э́тому	э́той	э́тому	э́тимъ
A.	= N. or G.	э́ту	э́то	= N. or G.
I.	э́тимъ	э́той	э́тимъ	э́тими
L.	э́томъ	э́той	э́томъ	э́тихъ

сей, сія́, сіе́ (or сё) ; сій=*this (here).*

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc., Fem., Neut.
N.	сей	сія́	сіе́	сі́и
G.	сего́	сей	сего́	сихъ
D.	сему	сей	сему́	симъ
A.	= N. or G.	сію́	сіе́	= N. or G.
I.	сѣмъ	сей	сѣмъ	сѣ́ми
L.	сёмъ	сей	сёмъ	сихъ

Observations.

1. For the inst. sing. той, этой, and сей the full forms тóю, э́тою, and сéю are also used.

2. Of these three pronouns э́тотъ is the oftenest, сей the most seldom used. Э́тотъ is frequently used where we should say *that* in English, e. g. in very common phrases such as:

Что э́то такóе? = *what's that* (lit. = *what this such*) *?*
Кто э́то такóй? = *who's that* (lit. = *who this such*) *?*
Э́то бы́ло давнó = *that was long ago.*
Э́то óчень хорошó = *that's very nice.*
Э́то нашъ домъ = *that is our house.*

Это can also mean *these* or *those* when it is the subject of a sentence and very frequently has this meaning, e. g.:

э́то мои́ дéти = *these* or *those* [*are*] *my children.*

The neuter pronoun то is often used as an enclitic affixed to a noun or another pronoun irrespective of gender or number to emphasize or to differentiate, and it sometimes seems to take the place of the definite article.

E. g. въ тóмъ-то и дéло or тó-то и есть (both =) *that's just the point*; домъ-то мой = *the house is mine.*

(The first of these is not to be confused with the similar idiom given below.)

In the colloquial language, especially that of the peasants, this pronoun can be affixed to any noun (but only in the nom.) and made to agree with it, and thus acquire the value of a definite article.

3. Тотъ is used specially frequently in argument, e. g. то, что . . . = *that which* . . .; it is also used as a definite article before a relative clause, e. g. тотъ мáльчикъ, котóрому я далъ дéньги = *the boy to whom I gave the money.* In conversation, however, even *that* (*yonder*) is frequently rendered by э́тотъ with the addition of тамъ = *there*, e. g. э́тотъ домъ тамъ—нашъ = *that house over there is ours.*

4. Тотъ is especially common compounded with prepositions, e. g. потóмъ = *then* (lit. = *upon that*), затéмъ = *then* (lit. = *behind that*), потомý = *therefore* (lit. = *according to that*), кромé того́ =

besides (lit. = *outside that*), за то=*on the other hand* (lit. = *for that*).

5. Тотъ followed by этотъ is often used for *the former* and *the latter*.

6. It is important to notice the very common idiom то и дѣло (lit. = *and that's the thing*), which means *incessantly*.

7. Сей is seldom used except in a few phrases in which it is extremely common, e. g. сейча́съ = *immediately* (lit. = *this instant*, though the noun часъ has changed its meaning and in modern Russian = *hour*); сію мину́ту = *this minute, this instant*; сего́дня = *to-day* (lit. = *of this day*); до сихъ поръ = *till now* (lit. = *till these times*); и то и сё = *both the one and the other*; при сёмъ = '*enclosed*' (lit. = *in the presence of this*).

8. The pronouns такой, э́такой, and таковой = *such* are declined like adjectives, q.v.

9. The pronoun о́ный = *that* (*yonder*), which supplied the forms of the personal pronoun онъ, &c., is now obsolete and only common in the phrase во вре́мя о́но = *in days of yore* (lit. = *into that time*).

10. Тотъ followed by the enclitic же = *the same* and is very common, e. g. въ то́мъ же до́мѣ = *in the same house*, того́ же а́втора (gen.) = *by the same author*, съ тѣ́мъ же ма́льчикомъ = *with the same boy*; the words одинъ и = *one and* are often added, e. g. въ одно́мъ и то́мъ же го́родѣ = *in one and the same town*, въ одно́ и то́ жевре́мя = *at one and the same time*. The phrase то́же, always written as one word, = *also*, e. g. мы то́же = *we also*. Э́тотъ же = *this same* and тако́й же = *of the same kind*, are also very common.

§ 49. Relative and Interrogative Pronouns.

кто = *who* (masc. and fem.); что = *what*.

N.	кто	что
G.	кого́	чего́
D.	кому́	чему́
A.	кого́	что
I.	кѣ́мъ	чѣ́мъ
L.	комъ	чёмъ

чей, чья, чьё; чьи = *whose.*

Russian has a special pronoun for *whose* which is declined throughout.

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc., Fem., Neut.
N.	чей	чья	чьё	чьи
G.	чьего́	чьей	чьего́	чьихъ
D.	чьему́	чьей	чьему́	чьимъ
A.	= N. or G.	чью	чьё	= N. or G.
I.	чьимъ	чьей	чьимъ	чьи́ми
L.	чьёмъ	чьей	чьёмъ	чьихъ

кото́рый = *which*, како́й and каковой = *of what sort*, are declined like adjectives, q. v.; кото́рый supplies the plural of кто, что.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. The pronoun чей is of course most frequently used in the nominative, e. g. чей э́тотъ домъ? = *whose house is this?* But the other cases are not uncommon, e. g. чью жену́ онъ лю́бить? = *whose wife does he love?*

2. Что is used to introduce a subordinate clause in all those cases where in English we use the demonstrative pronoun *that*, i. e. after all verbs of asserting, denying, believing, thinking, perceiving, feeling, &c., e. g. я говорю́, что онъ дура́къ = *I say that he* [*is*] *a fool.* It is also used in the expressions for *why* and *because*, e. g. отчего́? = *why?* (= *from what*), отто́го что = *because* (lit. = *from that what*), почему́? = *why?* (lit. = *according to what*), потому́ что = *because* (lit. = *according to that what*). It is important to notice the difference in meaning of these two expressions: отчего́ = *from what cause*, e. g. отчего́ сего́дня такъ темно́? = *why is it so dark to-day?* отчего́ вы такъ блѣдны́? = *why are you so pale?* but почему́ = *on what ground*, e. g. почему́ вы говори́те э́то? = *why do you say this?* почему́ онъ жела́етъ ви́дѣть меня́? = *why does he wish to see me?* Of course there are many questions in which either of the two words could be used indifferently, and the answer to both is usually introduced by потому́ что, which is far commoner than отто́го что. There is yet another expression for *why*, viz. зачѣ́мъ? which means literally *behind what?* and thus comes to mean *trying to get what?* or *with what object?* e. g. зачѣ́мъ вы пришли́? = *why*

(sc. *with what object*) *have you come?* The answer to such a question is introduced by затѣмъ, чтобы (or more often merely by чтобы) = *in order that* (lit. *behind that what*), which is followed by the past tense or the infinitive; the particle -бы affixed to что (and sometimes written чтобъ) is really part of the verb быть = *to be*, q. v. Чтобы means *in order that*, and is also used to introduce wishes, when it is always followed by the past tense, e. g. чтобы э́то бы́ло такъ! = *that it were so!* Both что as a conjunction and чтобы are enclitics and have no accent.

3. Кто is often used by itself to express *whoever*, e. g. кто умѣетъ по-норвѐжски, тотъ и понимаетъ по-да́тски = *whoever knows Norwegian can also understand* (lit. *that one also understands*) *Danish*, кто говори́тъ э́то, врётъ = *whoever says this, lies.* Another very common way of expressing *whoever* and *whatever* is to add бы ни to кто and что, which are then always followed by the past tense; it is important to notice that the particle ни does not imply negation; e. g. кто́ бы мнѣ ни говори́лъ э́то, я ему́ не повѣрю = *whoever should tell me this, I shall not believe him*; что́ бы вы ни дѣлали, я не бу́ду васъ слу́шать = *whatever you do, I shall not listen to you*; and the following very common idioms may be mentioned: кто́ бы то ни́ было = *whoever it be*, что́ бы то ни́ было = *whatever it be*, and во что́ бы то ни ста́ло = *cost what it may* (lit. = *into whatever it should become*). This use of бы must be carefully distinguished from that mentioned in the preceding paragraph. *Whoever not* can only be translated by кто не . . . , e. g. кто не вида́лъ Москвы́, не зна́етъ Россіи = *whoever has not seen Moscow, does not know Russia.* Other common ways of expressing *whoever* and *whatever* are paraphrases such as *every one who, all that*, &c.

4. Кто . . . , кто . . . is very commonly used to express *some . . . others . . .*, e. g. всѣ уѣхали, кто на лошада́хъ, кто по желѣзной доро́гѣ = *they have all left, some by carriage* (lit. = *on horses*), *some by railway.*

5. The particle же or -жъ is very frequently affixed to кто, что, чей, and како́й, and gives these pronouns the meaning *who then?* &c.; e. g. кого́ же вы ви́дѣли? = *whom then was it you saw, whom then did you see?* что же случи́лось? = *what then has happened?* Чтожъ by itself, as an exclamation, is very commonly used in answer to a question or request, and means approximately *certainly*, or *why not?* Another very common idiom is ну, такъ что-жъ? =

well, what about it? Yet another что-жъ дѣлать? = *what's to be done, que voulez vous?*

Отчего же? and почему же? are also very common in argument, meaning *but why then?* Отчего же! is also used as an exclamation, meaning both *far from it, not at all*, and *certainly, by all means.*

6. Что and что-жъ is also very frequently used to introduce a question, and is in fact almost the most usual way of introducing an interrogative sentence; in this use it never has any emphasis on it; e.g. что вы поѣдете въ этомъ году заграницу? = *shall you go abroad this year?*

§ 50. Definitive Pronouns.

самъ, сама́, само́; са́ми = *self.*

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc., Fem., Neut.
N.	самъ	сама́	само́	са́ми
G.	самого́	само́й	самого́	сами́хъ
D.	самому́	само́й	самому́	сами́мъ
A.	= N. or G.	само́	само́	= N. or G.
I.	сами́мъ	само́й	сами́мъ	сами́ми
L.	само́мъ	само́й	само́мъ	сами́хъ

весь, вся, всё; всѣ = *all, the whole.*

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc., Fem., Neut.
N.	весь	вся	всё	всѣ
G.	всего́	всей	всего́	всѣхъ
D.	всему́	всей	всему́	всѣмъ
A.	= N. or G.	всю	всё	= N. or G.
I.	всѣмъ	всей	всѣмъ	всѣми
L.	всёмъ	всей	всёмъ	всѣхъ

Observations.

1. Всякій and ка́ждый = *every, each*, ино́й = *some*, and другой = *other*, are declined like adjectives, q. v. For оди́нъ = *only, alone* (lit. = *one*) cf. Numerals, § 60.

2. *One another* is expressed in Russian by the phrase другъ дру́га, which is the nom. and acc. sing. of the word другъ, which originally meant *second* or *other*, but in modern Russian has acquired the meaning of *friend*; e.g. они́ о́чень лю́бятъ другъ дру́га = *they love*

one another very much, мы пошли́ другъ съ дру́гомъ = *we went one with the other.*

3. Самъ can be used either before or after the noun it qualifies, e. g. я самъ = *I myself* (masc.), я сама́ = *I myself* (fem.), самъ царь = *the tsar himself*, я ви́дѣлъ самого́ царя́ = *I saw the tsar himself*, онъ мнѣ самому́ сказа́лъ э́то = *he told this to me myself* (sc. *not through anybody else*), мы са́ми = *we ourselves*, онъ самъ or самъ онъ = *he himself*, само́ собо́ю = *by* or *of itself*, я самъ себѣ́ купи́лъ э́то = *I bought this for myself myself*, она́ сама́ себѣ́ купи́ла э́то = *she bought this for herself herself.*

4. It is not difficult to distinguish the use of самъ from that of the reflexive pronoun себя́, but самъ is very easily confused with the longer form of the same word са́мый = *the very*, which is declined like an adjective, e. g. тотъ же са́мый человѣ́къ = *the very same man*, but самъ человѣ́къ = *the man himself*; въ са́момъ це́нтрѣ го́рода = *in the very centre of the town*, but въ само́мъ го́родѣ = *in the town itself.* Са́мый is also used in the formation of the superlative degree in the comparison of adjectives, q. v.

5. The use of весь does not present any difficulties, e. g. весь го́родъ = *the whole town*, весь день (acc.) = *all day long*, всю ночь (acc.) = *all night long*, она вся въ чёрномъ = *she* [*is*] *all in black.* It is very important to notice a few very common idioms in which the word occurs: совсѣ́мъ = *quite* (lit. = *with all*), всё равно́ = *it's all the same* (lit. = *all even*), всего́ хоро́шаго, всего́ лу́чшаго! = (*I wish you*) *everything good, everything of the best!* (gen. after verb of wishing), всего́ = *altogether, in all*, e. g. всего пять мѣ́стъ багажа́ = *five pieces of luggage in all* (lit. = *of all*), всё = *continually* (this is really an adverbial use of the neuter), e. g. она́ всё пла́кала = *she kept on crying all the time*, онъ всё кричи́тъ = *he keeps on shouting, he is always shouting*, я всё пишу́ = *I am always writing*, онъ всё хо́дитъ въ теа́тръ = *he is always going to the theatre.* It is very important to be sure of pronouncing весь with a soft c and closed e, as there is another word вѣсъ having the open e-sound and hard ending, meaning *weight.*

§ 51. Indefinite Pronouns.

никто́ = *no one*, ничто́ = *nothing.*

These are declined exactly like кто and что, but it is to be observed that the nom. and acc. ничто́ is very rarely used, the gen.

being almost always substituted for them, e. g. что съ ва́ми? ничего́! = *what is the matter with you? nothing!* э́то ничего́! = *no matter!* (lit. = *this* [*is*] *nothing*). When a verb follows either of these pronouns, it must always be negative, since in Russian two negatives do not make an affirmative, but are on the other hand necessary to complete the negation, e. g. никто́ не пришёлъ = *no one has come*, я никому́ не сказа́лъ = *I have told no one*, онъ мнѣ ничего́ не да́лъ = *he has given me nothing.*

The following very common idioms may be noticed: никого́ не вида́ть = *there is no one to be seen*, ничего́ не вида́ть = *there is nothing to be seen*, никого́ or ничего́ не слыха́ть = *there is no one* or *nothing to be heard.*

There is a very idiomatic adverbial use of the word ничего́ in which it means *tolerably, fairly well*, e. g. какъ вы себя́ чу́вствуете? ничего́! = *how do you feel* [*yourself*]*? fairly well!* This can also be used with a verb, e. g. онъ игра́етъ ничего́ = *he plays fairly well*, but of course with the double negative the meaning would be negative, e. g. онъ ничего́ не игра́етъ = *he is not playing anything.*

When никто́ and ничто́ are used with a preposition, the latter is inserted between the ни- and the pronoun, e. g. ни съ кѣ́мъ = *with no one*, ни о чёмъ = *about nothing*, ни за что́ = *not for anything*, ни съ чѣ́мъ = *without accomplishing one's object* (lit. = *with nothing*); ни въ чёмъ не быва́ло is an idiom meaning *not in the least*, and какъ бу́дто ни въ чёмъ не быва́ло = *quite unruffled, as if nothing had happened.*

никако́й = *of no kind*

is declined like an adjective, q. v.

не́кого = *there is no one to . . .*

не́чего = *there is nothing to . . .*

Не- can be prefixed to any case of кто and что except the nom., and the words thus formed are written as one word, except when used with a preposition, which, just as in the case of никто́, is inserted between the не- and the pronoun. It is always followed by the inf. It is important to remember that the accent is always on the не-, while in никто́ it is always on the last syllable; e. g. не́чего дѣ́лать or дѣ́лать не́чего! = *there is nothing to be done!* (lit. = *to do*; a very common idiom), говори́ть не́чего! = *there is nothing more to be said, there's no denying it*, не́кому сказа́ть = *there is no one*

to tell, нé съ кѣмъ говорúть = *there is no one to talk to* (lit. = *with*), нé о чёмъ писáть = *there is nothing to write about*, and the common idioms: нé за что = *il n'y pas de quoi* (our *don't mention it*), нé за чѣмъ = *there is no object, there is no point.*

нѣкто = *some one*, нѣчто = *something.*

It is important not to confuse these two words with нéкого and нéчего. The beginner is all the more likely to confuse them because ѣ is pronounced exactly like e and in both the accent is on the same syllable. But as a matter of fact the two words are of very rare occurrence except in the nom., much the commoner expressions for *some one* and *something* being those mentioned lower; e. g. я слы́шалъ нѣчто о нёмъ = *I have heard something about him*, онъ мнѣ нѣчто сказáлъ = *he told me something.*

нѣкоторый = *a certain, some*, is declined like an adjective, q. v.

кто́-то = *some one*, что́-то = *something*, кто́-нибудь = *some one or other, any one*, что́-нибудь = *something or other, anything* (lit. = *who not be, who be it not*), кто́-либо = *any one*, что́-либо = *anything.*

These are all declined exactly like кто and что. The difference in meaning between кто́-то and кто́-нибудь is slight but very important. Кто́-то is the more definite of the two and can never mean *any one*; кто́-нибудь is less definite and means *some one* or *any one.* The difference is best illustrated by examples: кто́-то идётъ = *some one is coming*, кто́-то пришёлъ = *some one has come*, кто́-то сказáлъ мнѣ = *some one told me*, кто́-то тамъ = [*there is*] *some one there*, кто́-то позвони́лъ = *some one has rung*, я далъ кому́-то кни́гу, но не по́мню кому́ = *I gave the book to some one, but I don't remember to whom*, она́ сказáла мнѣ что́-то о нёмъ = *she told me something about him* (sc. *but I don't want to tell you what*), я ви́жу что́-то тамъ = *I see something there*, онъ написáлъ что́-то на бумáжкѣ = *he wrote something on the piece of paper*, рубль съ чѣмъ-то = *a rouble with something* (i. e. *over a rouble, I forget how much*), говя́дина съ чѣмъ-то = *beef with something* (i. e. *something with it, I forget what*), but до́ма-ли кто́-нибудь? or кто́-нибудь до́ма? = *is any one at home?* спроси́те кого́-нибудь! = *ask some one!* я спрошу́ у кого́-нибудь совѣта = *I shall ask advice from some one*, я куплю́ вамъ что́-нибудь = *I shall buy you something or other* (sc. *I don't know myself exactly what*), я куплю́ вамъ что́-то = *I shall buy you something* (sc. *I know what, but I am not going to*

tell you), на́до сдѣ́лать что́-нибудь = *something must be done* (sc. *I don't know what*), надѣ́ньте что́-нибудь тепло́е = *put something warm on* (sc. *it doesn't matter what*), ску́шайте что́-нибудь ещё = *eat something more*, скажи́те мнѣ́ что́-нибудь о себѣ́ = *tell me something about yourself*, сыгра́йте намъ что́-нибудь! = *do play us something!*

Кто́-либо and что́-либо are still more indefinite, e. g. спроси́те кого́-либо, а онъ ска́жетъ вамъ . . . = *ask any one you like, and he will tell you . . .*, дайте кому́-либо = *give* [*it*] *to any one you like.*

Ко́й-кто = *a few*, ко́е-что = *a little.* These are also declined exactly like кто and что; they imply indefiniteness of number or quantity, e. g. я спра́шивалъ ко́й-кого = *I have been asking one or two people*, онъ сказа́лъ мнѣ́ ко́е-что о себѣ́ = *he told me a few things about himself*, я узна́лъ ко́е-что о . . . = *I have found out a thing or two about . . .*, я ко́й-съ кѣ́мъ говори́лъ объ э́томъ = *I have been talking to one or two people about this.*

Ко́й-какой = *a few* and любо́й = *any you like* are declined like adjectives, q.v.

DECLENSION OF THE ADJECTIVES

§ 52. The adjective in Russian has two forms, the shorter and the longer; the shorter is called the predicative, the longer the attributive.

The predicative form of the adjective is used almost solely when the adjective is the predicate of a sentence; in form it is exactly like a noun, and except in popular poetry it occurs only in the nominative, e. g. домъ хоро́шъ = *the house* [*is*] *nice* (cf. German: *das Haus ist schön*), мой сестра́ больна́ = *my sister* [*is*] *ill*, мо́ре глубоко́ = *the sea* [*is*] *deep*, они́ живы́ = *they* [*are*] *alive*, я о́чень радъ = *I* [*am*] *very glad*, онъ сча́стливъ = *he* [*is*] *happy*, она́ здоро́ва = *she* [*is*] *well*, я винова́тъ = *I* [*am*] *to blame*, я винова́та = *I* [*am*] *to blame* (if a woman is speaking). But whenever an adjective qualifies a noun, the longer or attributive form must be used; this is an amalgamation of the shorter form with the pronominal endings. There is a hard and a soft declension, corresponding to the hard and soft nouns.

§ 53. **Hard Declension.**

Example: бѣ́лый, бѣ́лая, бѣ́лое = *white*.

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	бѣ́лый	бѣ́лая	бѣ́лое
G.	бѣ́лаго	бѣ́лой	бѣ́лаго
D.	бѣ́лому	бѣ́лой	бѣ́лому
A.	= N. or G.	бѣ́лую	бѣ́лое
I.	бѣ́лымъ	бѣ́лой	бѣ́лымъ
L.	бѣ́ломъ	бѣ́лой	бѣ́ломъ

Plural.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	бѣ́лые	бѣ́лыя	
G.	бѣ́лыхъ		
D.	бѣ́лымъ		
A.	= N. or G.		
I.	бѣ́лыми		
L.	бѣ́лыхъ		

Hard Declension when the ending is accented.

Example: молодо́й, молода́я, молодо́е = *young*.

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	молодо́й	молода́я	молодо́е
G.	молодо́го	молодо́й	молодо́го

after which it is declined exactly like бѣ́лый, except that the accent is always on the ending, and on the first syllable of the ending when it is disyllabic.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. The rule with regard to the acc. sing. masc. and acc. pl. of the adjective is the same as that which governs the acc. sing. and pl. of masc. and the acc. pl. of fem. nouns, i. e. for an animate object it is always the same as the genitive and for an inanimate object the same as the nominative.

2. There is an alternative longer form of three syllables for every fem. inst. sing., e. g. бѣ́лою or бѣ́лой.

3. The nominative singular and plural of the attributive form of the adjective arose through the affixing of the lost pronominal nominatives (which are given in scientific works as jь ja je, pronounced *i ya ye*, whose place in the pronominal declension has been taken by онъ она́ оно́) to nominatives of the predicative form, thus бѣ́лый = бѣ́ль + и (jь), бѣ́лая = бѣ́ла + я (ja), бѣ́лое = бѣ́ло + е (je). The form of the nom. sing. masc. is really of Old Bulgarian origin and has forced its way not only into Russian orthography but also into the living language, thanks to the influence of the Old Bulgarian ecclesiastical tradition in the Russian language; the real Russian form of the nom. sing. is -о́й, which is still retained in adjectives which are accented on the ending, e. g. молодо́й = *young*.

The other cases were formed analogously, though the process is clearer in some than in others, e. g. бѣ́лаго = бѣ́ла + его, бѣ́лую = бѣ́лу + ю (= ju *yu*, an old acc. of the pronominal declension), бѣ́лому = бѣ́лу + ему; in the other cases more drastic contraction has occurred.

4. Several very common adjectives (including names) are accented on the ending and declined like молодо́й, e. g. передово́й = *foremost*, золото́й = *golden*, больно́й = *ill*, сѣдо́й = *gray-haired*, большо́й = *big*, Толсто́й = *Tolstói* (while the adjective то́лстый = *thick, fat*, is declined like бѣ́лый). It may be mentioned that almost all Russian surnames are adjectives and must be declined adjectivally, e. g. сочине́нія Толсто́го = *the works of Tolstói*, я зналъ Толсто́го = *I knew Tolstói*, я зна́ю графи́ню Толсту́ю = *I know Countess Tolstói*, Толсты́е = *the Tolstóis*, у Толсты́хъ = *at the house of the Tolstóis*. Also the ordinals: второ́й = *second*, шесто́й = *sixth*, седьмо́й = *seventh*, восьмо́й = *eighth*, and сороково́й = *fortieth*.

5. Many adjectives ending in both -ый and -о́й are used substantivally, e. g. столо́вая (sc. ко́мната) = *dining-room*, гости́ная = *drawing-room*, кладова́я = *store-room*, насѣко́мое = *insect*, живо́тное = *animal*, портно́й = *tailor*, городово́й = *policeman*, рядово́й = *private*, ломово́й = *carter*, больно́й = *the patient, the invalid* (fem. больна́я), чужо́й = *stranger*, мясно́е = *the meat-course, joint*, борзо́й = *a wolf-hound* (lit. = *swift*), золото́й = *a gold coin* (*ten roubles*), and very commonly the names of streets, e. g. Не́вскій (sc. проспе́кть) = *the Nevsky* (in Petrograd), Морска́я (sc. у́лица) = *the Morskáya* (street in Petrograd).

6. The ы of the case-endings of those adjectives whose stems both end in к, г, and х, and are accented, becomes и, e. g. крѣ́пкій = *strong*, крѣ́пкимъ, крѣ́пкіе, &c. (with fem. крѣ́пкая and neut. крѣ́пкое), ма́ленькій = *little*, вели́кій = *great*, широ́кій = *broad*, ди́кій = *wild*, стро́гій = *severe*, ти́хій = *quiet*, у́зкій = *narrow*, коро́ткій = *short*, сла́дкій = *sweet*, and many others; this category includes all adjectives derived from names of towns and countries, e. g. моско́вскій = *of Moscow*, *Muscovite*, петрогра́дскій = *of Petrograd*, ки́евскій = *of Kiev*, ри́жскій = *of Riga*, русскій = *Russian*, нѣме́цкій = *German*, францу́зскій = *French*, англійскій = *English*, and innumerable surnames which are often derived from names of places, e. g. Оболе́нскій = *Obolensky*, Чайко́вскій = *Tchaikovsky*, Достое́вскій = *Dostoyevsky*, &c. It must not be forgotten that all such surnames are declined throughout, e. g. the wife and unmarried daughter or sister of a man called Оболе́нскій is Оболе́нская, his whole family Оболе́нскіе, &c., and that for a foreigner to say, e. g. Madame Obolensky, is just as correct as it would be to talk about the Emperor Catherine.

But when an adjective whose stem ends in к, г, or х is accented on the ending then it is declined like молодо́й, and the ы only changes to и in the masc. and neut. inst. sing. and throughout the plural, e. g. городско́й = *belonging to the town* (nom. pl. городскіе), дорого́й = *dear* (inst. sing. дорогі́мъ, nom. pl. дорогіе, &c.), as also those surnames of this category which are accented on the ending, e. g. Трубецко́й = *Trubetskoi* (nom. pl. Трубецкіе = *the Trubetskois*), Шаховско́й = *Shakhovskoi* (fem. Шаховска́я), &c.

In this category are included those adjectives whose stems end in ж and ш, and are accented on the ending, e. g. the very common words чужо́й = *strange* (sc. *not known*), чужіе = *strangers*, у чужи́хъ = *amongst strangers*, въ чужо́мъ до́мѣ = *in another person's house*, and большо́й = *big*, большо́й домъ = *a large house*, большо́й люби́тель иску́сства = *a great lover of art*, большіе often = *the grown-ups*.

7. The pronouns which are declined like adjectives all belong to the hard declension: ка́ждый = *every*, *each*, кото́рый = *which*, не́который = *a certain*, *some* are declined exactly like бѣ́лый, всяки́й = *of every kind*, *every*, *each*, like крѣ́пкій, and тако́й, э́тако́й, таково́й = *of such a kind*, тако́й-же = *of the same kind*, како́й and каково́й = *of what kind*, друго́й = *other*, никако́й = *of no kind*, ино́й = *some*, ко́й-какой = *a few*, and любо́й = *any you like*, like дорогой and молодо́й.

These words are so very common that a few examples of their use are added: ка́ждый день (acc.) = *every day*, на ка́ждомъ шагу́ = *at every step*, ка́ждую мину́ту (acc.) = *every minute*, ка́ждый зна́етъ = *every one knows*, кото́рый но́меръ? = *which number?* кото́рый часъ? = *what time is it?* (lit. = *which hour?*), въ кото́ромъ часу́? = *at what o'clock?* кото́рое число́ сего́дня? = *what date is it to-day?* нѣ́которые наха́дятъ, что . . . = *some consider* (lit. = *find*) *that* . . ., нѣ́который Ива́новъ = *a certain* [*man called*] *Ivanov*, до нѣ́которой сте́пени = *to a certain extent*, въ нѣ́которомъ ро́дѣ = *in a certain way, in some ways*, вся́кій вздоръ = *all sorts of rubbish*, вся́кая кни́га = *each book*, вся́кія кни́ги = *all sorts of books*, вся́кая вся́чина = *odds and ends*, онъ тако́й ми́лый! = *he is such a nice man!* (N.B. Russians never say такъ ми́лый for *so nice*), она́ така́я ми́лая! = *she is such a nice woman!* они́ такіе ми́лые! = *they are such nice people!* въ таку́ю пого́ду = *in* (lit. *into*) *such weather*, въ тако́е вре́мя = *at such a time*, таки́мъ о́бразомъ = *in this way* (lit. *by such manner*), which often comes to mean *by doing this*, до тако́й сте́пени = *to such an extent*, тако́го ро́да = *of such a sort* (e. g. тако́го ро́да пье́са = *a play of this sort*; the nom. often follows the gen., but can also precede it), въ тако́мъ слу́чаѣ = *in such a case*, which comes to mean *since this is so*, въ тако́мъ ро́дѣ = *in that manner, of that sort*, тако́го-же ро́да, въ тако́мъ-же ро́дѣ = *of the same kind, in the same manner*, како́й онъ интере́сный! = *how interesting he is!* кака́я интере́сная кни́га! = *what an interesting book!* како́й краси́вый ма́льчикъ! = *what a beautiful boy!* кака́я хоро́шая пого́да! = *what nice weather!* кака́я плоха́я (скве́рная) пого́да! = *what bad* (*nasty*) *weather!* каки́мъ о́бразомъ? = *in what manner?* какія но́вости сего́дня? = *what news is there to-day?* тако́го ро́да? = *of what sort?* (e. g. э́то тако́го ро́да пье́са? = *what sort of a play is this?*), въ како́мъ ро́дѣ = *what like?* како́й вздоръ! = *what rubbish!* кни́га, каковую́ вы написа́ли = *a book of the sort which you have written*, друго́й разъ = *another time*, друго́го ро́да = *of another sort*, на друго́й день = *the next day*, други́мъ о́бразомъ = *in another way*, другіе говоря́тъ = *others say*, никаки́мъ о́бразомъ = *in no way*, ни въ како́мъ слу́чаѣ = *in no case, in no eventuality*, which comes to mean *whatever happens*, ни за какіе ковры́шки = *not for anything in the world* (lit. *not for any sort of little carpets*), въ кото́ромъ го́родѣ вы живёте? ни въ како́мъ = *in which town do you live? not in any*, кой-какія но́вости = *some items of news*, ино́й разъ = *sometimes* (Germ. *manch-*

mal), иные́ говоря́ть = *some say* (originally ино́й meant *one*, e.g. инорого́ = *unicorn*, but it also acquired the meaning *other*, e.g. инородцы = *people of other race than one's own*), ко́й-какія кни́ги = *a few books of sorts*, въ любо́й часъ = *at any hour* (lit. *into*), въ любо́мъ го́родѣ = *in any town you like to mention*, въ любо́й день *any day you like* (lit. *into*).

There is a very idiomatic use of каково́й as an interjection, usually expressing admiration at somebody's exploit, and it is always used in the predicative form and precedes the noun, e.g. како́въ ру́сскій бале́тъ! = *well, what do you think of the Russian ballet, isn't it fine!* какова́ пѣви́ца! = *isn't she a splendid singer!* како́въ урожа́й = *what a fine harvest!*

8. It is not absolutely true that all adjectives have both predicative and attributive forms. The two words радъ (fem. ра́да) = *glad* and гора́здъ = *capable* have only the predicative form. To render their meaning when used attributively synonyms such as ра́достный = *joyful*, спосо́бный = *capable* must be used.

Conversely большо́й = *big* has no predicative form, and if used predicatively the synonym вели́кій takes its place, e.g. Россія велика́ = *Russia is large*; further, all words in -скій, e.g. ру́сскій = *Russian*, in -ской, e.g. городско́й = *of the town*, and adjectives denoting materials, e.g. золото́й = *golden*, ка́менный = *of stone* or *brick*, have only the attributive form, e.g. *he is Russian* = онъ ру́сскій, *my ring is of gold* = моё кольцо́ золото́е, *this bridge is of stone* = э́тотъ мостъ ка́менный. Otherwise every adjective has both forms and the shorter must be used whenever the adjective is the predicate. To form a shorter from a longer adjective it is only necessary to cut off the endings -ый, -я, and -е, then for the masc. to substitute -ъ and for the fem. and neut. nothing; for the pl. cut off -е, -я; e.g. ми́лый, ми́лая, ми́лое = *nice, dear*, short form = милъ, мила́, мило́, pl. милы́.

Examples of use: мила́я дѣ́вочка = *a nice little girl*, дѣ́вочка мила́ = *the little girl* [*is*] *nice*, while it is also possible to say дѣ́вочка ми́лая = *the little girl is a nice* (sc. *little girl*), дѣ́вочка така́я ми́лая = *the little girl is such a nice* (sc. *little girl*); онъ ми́лый = *he is a nice* [*man*], онъ тако́й ми́лый = *he is such a nice* [*man*], онъ милъ = *he is nice*, онъ такъ милъ = *he is so nice*. The only difficulty that occurs in forming the short form is that in some cases in the nom. masc. sing. where, after cutting off the -ый, a group of consonants

difficult to pronounce would be left, a vowel is inserted; this is usually e, which when accented becomes ё, e.g. больной = *ill*—бо́ленъ, у́мный = *clever*—умёнъ, си́льный = *strong*—си́ленъ or силёнъ, ви́дный = *visible*—ви́денъ, споко́йный = *calm*—споко́енъ; in the case of достойный = *worthy*, it is и—досто́инъ; before -къ it is о, коро́ткій = *short*—коро́токъ; кре́пкій = *strong*—кре́покъ; лёгкій = *light*—лёгокъ (except after ж and ш, when it is е, e.g. тяжкій = *heavy*,—тя́жекъ). О also occurs in a few other words: злой = *bad-tempered, wicked*—золъ; по́лный = *full*—по́лонъ.

In many cases, however, groups of consonants, which might seem difficult to the foreigner, but are as nothing to Russians, are left without any vowel being inserted, e.g. мёртвый = *dead*—мёртвъ; чёрствый = *hard* (especially *stale*, of bread)—чёрствъ.

9. It has been pointed out that in the language as it is spoken and written the predicative form of the adjective only occurs in the nominative; in the folk-poetry, however, which is epic in character, the other cases are often used, usually as fixed epithets for certain things, and recur with great frequency.

10. The first halves of compound adjectives which are hard end in -о, e.g. бѣлока́менный = *of white stone*, свѣ́тло-зелёный = *light green*, тёмно-се́рый = *dark gray*, во́лжско-ка́мскій банкъ = *the bank of the Volga and the Kama*, ру́сско-нѣме́цкій слова́рь = *a Russian-German dictionary*.

Corresponding to the soft declension of nouns, there is also one of adjectives, though the number included in it is very much smaller than that belonging to the hard declension:

§ 54. **Soft Declension.**

Example: си́ній, си́няя, си́нее = *dark blue*.

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	си́ній	си́няя	си́нее
G.	си́няго	си́ней	си́няго
D.	си́нему	си́ней	си́нему
A.	=N. or G.	си́нюю	си́нее
I.	си́нимъ	си́ней	си́нимъ
L.	си́немъ	си́ней	си́немъ

	Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	си́ніе	си́нія	
G.	си́нихъ		
D.	си́нимъ		
A.	= N. or G.		
I.	си́ними		
L.	си́нихъ		

It will be observed that all the soft vowels in the endings of the soft declension correspond to the hard vowels in those of the hard declension, i. e. (и) i to ы, я to а, ю to у, е to о.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. The rule with regard to the acc. sing. masc. and acc. pl. masc. and fem. is the same as for the hard adjectives.

2. There is an alternative longer form of three syllables for every inst. sing. fem., e. g. си́нею and си́ней.

3. The predicative form of the soft adjectives is practically never used.[1]

4. There are no soft adjectives having the accent on the ending.

5. There are a few soft adjectives which are used substantivally, e. g. ло́вчій = *huntsman*, стря́пчій = *attorney*, го́нчая (sc. соба́ка) = *sporting-dog* (cf. obs. 7), ле́шій = *wood-demon*, пере́дняя (sc. ко́мната) = *ante-room*.

6. The commonest adjectives declined like си́ній are only a few in number, and are therefore given here: дре́вній = *ancient*, и́скренній = *sincere*, вну́тренній = *interior*, внешній = *exterior*, кра́йній = *extreme*, зде́шній = *belonging to this place, from here*, та́мошній = *belonging to that place, from there*, вчера́шній = *of yesterday*, сего́дняшній = *of to-day*, за́втрашній = *of to-morrow*, весе́нній (or ве́шній) = *vernal*, ле́тній = *summer*, осе́нній = *autumnal*, зи́мній = *winter*, после́дній = *last*, сре́дній = *middle*, тепе́решній = *of to-day* (lit. *of now*), тогда́шній = *former* (lit. *of then*), пре́жній = *former*, за́дній = *hinder*, пере́дній = *front*, у́тренній = *morning*, вече́рній = *evening*, ве́рхній = *upper*, ни́жній = *lower* (Ни́жній Но́вгородъ = *Lower Newtown*), ра́нній = *early*, по́здній = *late*.

[1] Except the very common forms: хоро́шъ, хороша́, хорошо́, pl. хороши́, горя́чъ, -ча́, -чо́, -чи́, свѣжъ, -жа́, -жо́, -жи́, похо́жъ, похо́жа, похо́же, похо́жи, cf. p. 79.

7. Those soft adjectives which end in -шій, -жій, -чій, and -щій are declined somewhat differently from сúній, and as some of them are extremely common one is given in full:

хорóшій, хорóшая, хорóшее = *nice, good, jolly.*

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	хорóшій	хорóшая	хорóшее
G.	хорóшаго	хорóшей	хорóшаго
D.	хорóшему	хорóшей	хорóшему
A.	= N. or G.	хорóшую	хорóшее
I.	хорóшимъ	хорóшей	хорóшимъ
L.	хорóшемъ	хорóшей	хорóшемъ

Plural.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	хорóшіе	хорóшія	
G.		хорóшихъ	
D.		хорóшимъ	
A.		= N. or G.	
I.		хорóшими	
L.		хорóшихъ	

This is apparently a mixture of the hard and soft adjectives, but it is really soft, only the ш, ж, ч, and щ turn subsequent я, ы, о, ю into а, и (і), е, у. The following very common words are thus declined: горя́чій = *hot* (lit. = *burning*, e. g. in the phrase горя́чей воды́ (gen.) = *some hot water*), свѣ́жій = *fresh*, похо́жій = *like*, ме́ньшій = *lesser, smaller*, бóльшій = *greater, bigger*, лу́чшій = *better*, all superlatives in -шій and all participles in -чій and -щій.

8. The first halves of compound adjectives which are soft end in -е, e. g. сре́дне-азіа́тскій = *Central Asian*, дре́вне-гре́ческій = *ancient Greek.*

N.B. The adjective derived from Ни́жній Но́вгородъ (cf. obs. 6) is нижегоро́дскій, e. g. нижегоро́дская губе́рнія = *the Government* (i. e. *Province*) *of N. N.*

9. Special attention must be called to the plurals:

мно́гіе = *many*, and

немно́гіе = *few*, which are declined like хорóшіе; the respective singulars are adverbs, мно́го = *much* and немно́го = *little*; нѣ́сколько = *some* is similarly used except in the nom. plur. for which нѣ́которые is invariably substituted (cf. p. 75), e. g.

мно́гіе пахо́дятъ, что . . . = *many people consider* (lit. *find*) *that* . . . (it would be impossible to use the adverb here), то́лько у (о́чень) немно́гихъ свои́ экипа́жи = *only a (very) few have their own carriages*, въ нѣ́сколькихъ слу́чаяхъ = *in several cases*. The singular of мно́гіе is also used, e. g. во мно́гомъ э́та кни́га мнѣ нра́вится = *there is much in this book that pleases me* (lit. *this book in much*).

§ 55. **Declension of Possessive Adjectives.**

There is a large number of these in Russian, and as the declension is different from that of the ordinary adjective, an example is given in full:

Ива́новъ = *belonging to Ivan* (= *John*).

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	Ива́новъ	Ива́нова	Ива́ново
G.	Ива́нова	Ива́новой	Ива́нова
D.	Ива́нову	Ива́новой	Ива́нову
A.	= N. or G.	Ива́нову	Ива́ново
I.	Ива́новымъ	Ива́новой	Ива́новымъ
L.	Ива́новомъ	Ива́новой	Ива́новомъ

Plural.

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	Ива́новы	
G.	Ива́новыхъ	
D.	Ива́новымъ	
A.	= N. or G.	
I.	Ива́новыми	
L.	Ива́новыхъ	

Ива́новъ may mean either *belonging to Ivan*, e. g. Ива́новъ домъ, or it may be the surname *Ivanov*, which in this case is an ellipse standing for Ива́новъ сынъ = *Ivan's son*, or *Johnson*; Ива́нова may mean *belonging to Ivan* (fem.), e. g. Ива́нова сестра́ = *Ivan's sister*, or by itself, prefixed by Госпожа́ (Mrs. or Miss) it means *Miss* or *Mrs. Ivanov*—Госпожа Ива́нова = *Mrs. Johnson*; Ива́ново may mean *belonging to Ivan* (neut.) or it may be the name of a village, when the word село́ is understood, originally called after Ivan; Ива́новы may mean anything belonging to Ivan in the plural, or it may mean by itself *the Ivanovs*. Surnames and names of places formed in this way are endless, e. g. Па́вловъ = *Paul's*, '(*Mr.*) *Paul-*

son', Па́влова = '(*Mrs.* or *Miss*) *Paulson*', Петро́въ = *Peter's, Peterson*, Попо́въ = *priest's* (from попъ = *a priest*, a very common surname), and include many fantastic names of sometimes curious origin, e. g. Абрико́совъ (*apricot's*), Филосо́фовъ (*philosopher's*), Грибо́ѣдовъ (*mushroom-eater's*). It is from these words that the well-known Russian patronymics are formed by adding to them -ичъ (which is a diminutive with the special meaning *son of*) for the masculine and -на for the feminine, and it must be remembered that it is by their Christian names together with their patronymics that all Russians address one another, unless they are strangers or very intimate friends or relations. For example, if a man's surname is Попо́въ, his father's name Пётръ (*Peter*), and his own Christian name Па́велъ (*Paul*), his friends will all call him Па́велъ Петро́вичъ; let us say that his wife's name is А́нна (*Anne*) and her father's Christian name Ива́нъ, her full name will be А́нна Ива́новна Попо́ва, and all her friends will call her А́нна Ива́новна. There is a number of possessive adjectives from soft stems corresponding to the hard represented by Ива́новъ, e. g. Андре́й = *Andrew*, makes Андре́евъ; Васи́лій = *Basil*—Васи́льевъ; Серге́й = *Sergius*—Серге́евъ. In this category are included names of not purely Russian origin such as Турге́невъ = *Turgénev*.

Besides there is a large number of names and words which form their possessive adjectives in -инъ, -ынъ, instead of in -овъ (the case-endings are exactly the same), e. g. Ѳома́ (*Thomas*) makes Ѳоми́нъ, fem. Ѳомина́ with patronymic Ѳоми́чъ (*Thomas's son*); Илья́ (*Elias*) —Ильи́нъ (patronymics Ильи́чъ, fem. Ильи́нична); Ники́та (*Victor*) —Ники́тинъ (the name of a well-known poet); цари́ца (*tsaritsa, empress*)—Цари́цынъ (a large town on the Volga, sc. го́родъ), Цари́цыно (sc. село́, a place near Moscow), while царь makes ца́ревъ. This category includes such words as му́жнинъ = *husband's* (from мужъ = *husband*), же́нинъ = *wife's* (жена́), бра́тинъ = *brother's* (братъ), and сёстрынъ = *sister's* (сестра́), and those derived from diminutives, e. g. Серёжинъ from Серёжа = Серге́й = *Sergius*, Са́шинъ from Са́ша = Александръ or Александра = *Alexander* and *Alexandra*. Госпо́дь = *the Lord* makes Госпо́день, Госпо́дня, Госпо́дне.

All these possessive adjectives have only the predicative form.

Finally there is a large category of possessive adjectives formed especially from names of animals, but including some others;

these have only the attributive form. As the declension is rather different from the others, an example is given:

рыбій = *fish's* (from ры́ба = *fish*).

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	ры́бій	ры́бья	ры́бье
G.	ры́бьяго	ры́бьей	ры́бьяго
D.	ры́бьему	ры́бьей	ры́бьему
A.	= N. or G.	ры́бью	ры́бье
I.	ры́бьимъ	ры́бьей	ры́бьимъ
L.	ры́бьемъ	ры́бьей	ры́бьемъ

Plural.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.		ры́бьи	
G.		ры́бьихъ	
D.		ры́бьимъ	
A.		= N. or G.	
I.		ры́бьими	
L.		ры́бьихъ	

Common words belonging to this category are во́лчій = *wolf's* (волкъ), ли́сій = *fox's* (лисá), собáчій = *dog's* (собáка), ко́шечій = *cat's* (кошка), медвѣ́жій = *bear's* (медвѣ́дь), пти́чій = *bird's* (пти́ца), Бо́жій = *God's* (Богъ), человѣ́чій = *man's, human* (человѣ́къ), and the ordinal тре́тій = *third*, e. g. тре́тьяго кла́сса = *of the third class*, въ тре́тьемъ кла́ссѣ = *in the third class*, and the idiom тре́тьяго дня = *theday before yesterday* (lit. = *of the third day*).

§ 56. Note on the Terminations of Adjectives.

Adjectives ending in -ова́тый or -ева́тый correspond in meaning to English adjectives in *-ish*, e. g. желтова́тый = *yellowish* (жёлтый = *yellow*).

Those ending in -а́стый often imply largeness of the attribute, борода́стый = *with a big beard* (борода́ = *beard*, борода́тый = *bearded*. Those in -и́стый imply possession of a certain attribute: души́стый = *fragrant, possessing sweet smell* (духъ = *spirit*, духи́ (pl.) = *scent*).

The terminations -ёхонькій, -óхонькій, -ёшенькій imply completeness; very often the adjective in its original form precedes the other; these forms are usually used predicatively:

сытъ-сытёхонекъ = *absolutely satiated* (*with food*),

одúнъ-одинёхонекъ = *quite alone.*

The terminations -енькій and -онькій are diminutive:

мáленькій = *small* (from мáлый, which is seldom used).

THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

§ 57. The Predicative Comparative.

The comparative is formed by cutting off the -ый (or -ой) of the attributive form of the adjective and adding -ѣе (or -ѣй) to the stem.

The word thus formed has no singular or plural and is indeclinable; also it can only be used predicatively.

In the case of words of more than three syllables the comparative can be formed by using the positive prefixed by the adverb, бóлѣе = *more*, as in English, e. g. *more intelligible.*

Comparison can be expressed in three ways: by the words

(1) чѣмъ (inst. sing. of что), and
(2) нéжели } = *than*

followed by the nominative, and (3) by the genitive of comparison.

Examples: длúнный = *long*, ср. длиннéе,

э́та пáлка длиннéе чѣмъ та = *this stick* [*is*] *longer than that*,

красúвый = *beautiful*, ср. красúвѣе,

мой цвѣты красúвѣе вáшихъ (gen.) = *my flowers* [*are*] *more beautiful than yours*,

прямóй = *straight*, ср. прямéе,

э́та дорóга прямéе той (gen.) = *this road* [*is*] *straighter than that*,

or purely predicatively:

э́та пáлка длиннéе = *this stick* [*is the*] *straighter.*

If the comparative is followed by егó = *his*, ей = *hers*, or ихъ = *theirs*, a conjunction is necessary, e. g.

мой домъ красúвѣе нéжели егó = *my house* [*is*] *more beautiful than his*, since красúвѣе егó would mean *more beautiful than he.*

An example of an adjective of more than three syllables:

образо́ванный = *cultured*; predic. comp. бо́лѣе образо́ванъ (after which a conjunction is necessary) or образо́ваннѣе,

мы бо́лѣе образо́ваны чѣмъ они́ = *we* [*are*] *more cultured than they.*

Бо́лѣе is also invariably used with радъ = *glad*, which has no comparative, and with свѣ́жій = *fresh* and чёрствый = *hard*, *stale* (of bread), and похо́жій = *like*, e.g.,

э́то бо́лѣе похо́же на + acc. = *this is more like . . .*

To express *less* the adverb ме́нѣе with similar construction is used, e.g.,

они́ ме́нѣе образо́ваны чѣмъ мы = *they are less cultured than we.*

A very large number of adjectives, however, form their comparatives by adding -е instead of -ѣе. Some of these are adjectives whose stems originally ended in a consonant, such as к, liable to be softened into ч before the palatal ѣ and absorbing it in the process, others are the result of analogical influence or quite irregular. As they are all extremely common words a full list is given:

высо́кій = *high, tall*	ср.	вы́ше
ни́зкій = *low*	,,	ни́же
глубо́кій = *deep*	,,	глу́бже
ме́лкій = *shallow* (also *petty, small change, fine* print or writing)	,,	ме́льче
широ́кій = *broad*	,,	ши́ре
у́зкій = *narrow*	,,	у́же[1]
далёкій = *distant*	,,	да́льше
бли́зкій = *near*	,,	бли́же
то́лстый = *thick, fat* (especially of solids) / то́нкій = *thin* (especially of solids)	,,	то́лще – то́ньше
густо́й = *thick* (especially of liquids and gases) / жи́дкій = *thin* (especially of liquids and gases)	,,	гу́ще – жи́же
ре́дкій = *rare, sparse*	,,	ре́же
ранній = *early*	,,	ра́ньше
долгій = *long* (of time)	,,	до́льше
коро́ткій = *short*	,,	коро́че
кре́пкій = *strong*	,,	кре́пче
просто́й = *simple*	,,	про́ще

[1] Not to be confused with the conjunction уже́ = *already.*

стро́гій = *severe*	ср.	стро́же
тихій = *calm, slow*	„	ти́ше
лёгкій = *light*	„	ле́гче
дорого́й = *dear*	„	доро́же
дешёвый = *cheap*	„	деше́вле
бога́тый = *rich*	„	бога́че
молодо́й = *young*	„	моло́же
ста́рый = *old*	„	ста́рше
чи́стый = *clean*	„	чи́ще
твёрдый = *firm, hard*	„	твёрже
сла́дкій = *sweet*	„	слаще
го́рькій = *bitter*	„	го́рче
жа́ркій = *hot*	„	жа́рче
большо́й = *big*	„	бо́льше
ма́лый (ма́ленькій) = *little*	„	ме́ньше
хоро́шій = *nice, good*	„	лу́чше
худо́й (плохо́й, дурно́й) = *bad*	„	ху́же

A few adjectives have two forms of the comparative:

тяжёлый = *heavy*, ср. тяже́ле and тяжелѣе

по́здній = *late*, ср. по́зже and позднѣе.

Худо́й has two meanings, (1) *thin* (of human beings and animals) and (2) *bad*; the comparative of the first meaning is худѣе and of the second ху́же. *Fat* (of human beings and animals) is usually rendered by по́лный (ср. полнѣе) = *full*, though то́лстый (but only in the positive) is also used less politely of human beings.

As regards the accent the following rule may be mentioned: all so-called irregular comparatives (e. g. бо́льше) are accented on the penultimate. Of the others, adjectives of two syllables are accented on the ѣ of -ѣе; also зло́й = *wicked*—злѣе. Adjectives of more than two syllables keep the accent in the comparative where it was in the positive, e. g. краси́вый = *beautiful*—краси́вѣе; to this rule there are a few exceptions:

здоро́вый = *healthy*	ср.	здоровѣе
холо́дный = *cold*	„	холоднѣе
горя́чій = *hot*	„	горячѣе

(горя́чій is used of substances, e. g. water, food, also of the emotions; жа́ркій is used especially of the weather; тёплый = *warm* (ср. теплѣе) is used for everything).

§ 58. The Attributive Comparative.

When the comparative is used, not for purposes of strict comparison but as an attributive adjective expressing a stronger degree of any quality than is expressed by the positive, the form in -ѣе, &c., cannot be employed. Instead it must be either expressed by using бóлѣе with the positive or by another special form which some adjectives possess; this form ends in -ѣйшій, -айшій, -шій, or -шой and is declined like хорóшій (or like молодóй).

As only a few adjectives are commonly used in this form a full list is given:

высóкій = *high, tall*, ср. вы́сшій, e. g.
вы́сшіе чи́ны = *the upper ranks* (of officials)
въ вы́сшей сте́пени = *in the highest* (lit. *very high*) *degree*

ни́зкій = *low*, ср. ни́зшій, e. g.
ни́зшія цѣ́ны = *lower prices*
ни́зшее мѣ́сто = *a lower place*

да́льный = *distant*, ср. дальнѣ́йшій, e. g.
дальнѣ́йшее разви́тіе = *the subsequent development* (there is no attributive comparative from далёкій)

ста́рый = *old*, ср. ста́ршій, e. g.
ста́ршій братъ = *elder brother*

молодóй = *young*, ср. мла́дшій (from another stem млад-), e. g.
мла́дшая дочь = *younger daughter*

[хорóшій = *nice, good*], ср. лу́чшій, e. g.
лу́чшіе магази́ны = *the superior shops*

худóй = *bad*, ср. хýдшій, e. g.
хýдшіе сорта́ = *inferior sorts*

большóй = *big*, ср. бóльшій, e. g.
бóльшею ча́стью = *for the greater part*
бóльшіе города́ = *the larger towns*

ма́лый (ма́ленькій) = *little*, ср. мéньшій = *lesser* and меньшóй = *younger*, e. g.
са́мое мéньшее = *the very least*
меньшóй сынъ = *younger* (or *youngest*) son.

The form in -ѣйшій and -áйшій possessed by several adjectives, e. g. сла́бый = *weak*, слабѣ́йшій, крѣ́пкій = *strong*, крѣпча́йшій, is in meaning rather a superlative (like our *very weak, very strong*)

than a comparative. In almost all cases except those mentioned the attributive comparative can be and is usually expressed by бóлѣе with the positive, e. g.

э́то бóлѣе краси́вая шля́па = *this* [*is*] *the prettier hat.*

Rather + the positive or comparative is expressed by по- and the comparative, e. g.

мнѣ нужна́ па́лка по-длинне́е = *I want* (*to me is necessary*) *a rather long*(*er*) *stick*

я хочу́ что́-нибудь по-лу́чше, по-краси́вѣе, по-деше́вле = *I want something rather better* (*superior*), *prettier*, *cheaper* (sc. *than what you've shown me*).

§ 59. The Superlative.

The superlative can be expressed in several ways; the commonest way is to use the pronoun са́мый with the positive (and in some cases the comparative), e. g.

са́мый краси́вый = *most beautiful*
са́мый некраси́вый = *ugliest*
са́мый лу́чшій = *best*
са́мый плохо́й, са́мый скве́рный } = *worst*
са́мый большо́й = *biggest*
са́мый ма́ленькій = *smallest*
са́мый ста́ршій = *eldest*
са́мый мла́дшій = *youngest*
са́мый вы́сшій = *highest*
са́мый ни́зшій = *lowest*
са́мый кре́пкій = *strongest*
са́мый сла́бый = *weakest*, &c.

These can be used either predicatively or attributively, e. g.

са́мый лу́чшій магази́нъ = *the best shop*
э́то бу́деть са́мое лу́чшее = *that will be the best* (sc. *way*).

Another way of forming the superlative is by means of the prefix наи-, but only a few adjectives (always comparatives) are treated in this way and even they are seldom used, the form being considered archaic and pedantic. The commonest are:

наилу́чшій = *best*
наибо́льшій = *biggest*
наиме́ньшій = *smallest*

Another way of expressing *very* is by means of the prefix пре-, which is followed by the positive; this form is quite common, e. g.

прехоро́шенькій = *very pretty*
преподо́бный = *very reverend*
прескве́рный = *very bad*

пре- also occurs in the word превосхо́дный = *excellent*.

The termination -е́йшій, -а́йшій is added to a few adjectives with the meaning of a superlative; the commonest are:

высо́кій = *high*, superl. высоча́йшій
вели́кій = *great*, superl. величча́йшій
ма́лый = *little*, superl. малѣ́йшій

e. g. безъ малѣ́йшаго сомнѣ́нія = *without the smallest doubt*
глубо́кій = *deep*, superl. глубоча́йшій
чи́стый = *clean, pure*, superl. чистѣ́йшій
любе́зный = *amiable*, superl. любе́знѣйшій
дорого́й = *dear*, superl. дража́йшій (from a stem драг-).

Yet another way of expressing the superlative predicatively is by the predicative comparative followed by всѣхъ, e. g.

э́то мѣ́сто лу́чше всѣхъ = *this place* [*is*] *the best of all*.

THE NUMERALS

§ 60. The Cardinal and Ordinal Numerals.

1	оди́нъ, одна́, одно́	пе́рвый
2	два (M. and N.) двѣ (F.)	второ́й
3	три	тре́тій
4	четы́ре	четвёртый
5	пя́ть	пя́тый
6	шесть	шесто́й
7	семь	седьмо́й
8	во́семь	восьмо́й
9	де́вять	девя́тый
10	де́сять	деся́тый
11	оди́ннадцать	оди́ннадцатый
12	двѣна́дцать	двѣна́дцатый
13	трина́дцать	трина́дцатый

14	четы́рнадцать	четы́рнадцатый
15	пятна́дцать	пятна́дцатый
16	шестна́дцать	шестна́дцатый
17	семна́дцать	семна́дцатый
18	восемна́дцать	восемна́дцатый
19	девятна́дцать	девятна́дцатый
20	два́дцать	двадца́тый
21	два́дцать одúнъ одна́, &c.	два́дцать пе́рвый
22	двадцать два, дв*Ѣ́*	двадцать второ́й
23	двадцать три́	двадцать тре́тій
30	три́дцать	тридца́тый
40	со́рокъ	сороково́й
50	пятьдеся́ть	пятидеся́тый
60	шестьдеся́ть	шестидеся́тый
70	се́мьдесять	семидеся́тый
80	во́семьдесять	восьмидеся́тый
90	девяно́сто	девяно́стый
100	сто	со́тый
200	дв*Ѣ́*сти	двухсо́тый
300	три́ста	трёхсо́тый
400	четы́реста	четырёхсо́тый
500	пятьсо́ть	пятисо́тый
1,000	ты́сяча	ты́сячный
2,000	дв*Ѣ́* ты́сячи	двухты́сячный
5,000	пять ты́сячъ	пятиты́сячный
10,000	де́сять ты́сячъ	десятиты́сячный
100,000	сто ты́сячъ	стоты́сячный
1,000,000	милліо́нъ	милліо́нный

§ 61. Declension and Use of the Numerals.

Одúнъ is declined as follows:

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	одúнъ	одна́	одно́
G.	одного́	одно́й	одного́
D.	одному́	одно́й	одному́
A.	= N. or G.	одну́	одно́
I.	одни́мъ	одно́й	одни́мъ
L.	одно́мъ	одно́й	одно́мъ

	Plural.	
	Masc. Neut.	Fem.
N.	одни́	одне́
G.	одни́хъ	одне́хъ
D.	одни́мъ	одне́мъ
A.	= N. or G.	= N. or G.
I.	одни́ми	одне́ми
L.	одни́хъ	одне́хъ

The plural of оди́нъ is used in several ways, e. g.

одни́ . . . . други́е . . . . = *some . . . . others . . . .*

одне́ да́мы = *ladies only*

мы одни́ { = (1) *only we* / = (2) *we [are] alone*

одни́ми рука́ми = *with the hands only*

but одно́й руко́й = *with one hand*

одни́ми слова́ми = *by words alone*

but однимъ сло́вомъ = *in one word*

оди́нъ Богъ зна́етъ = *God alone knows*

одно́ и то́-же = *one and the same thing*

однообра́зный = *monotonous.*

Оди́нъ, одна́, одно́ is used in all numbers compounded with 1 according to the gender of the substantive which follows, which is always in the nom. sing., e. g.

два́дцать оди́нъ годъ = *twenty-one years*

со́рокъ оди́нъ рубль = *forty-one roubles*

ты́сяча и одна́ ночь = *the thousand and one nights.*

	два, двѣ = *two.*			ó́ба, ó́бѣ = *both.*	
	Masc. Neut.		Fem.	Masc. Neut.	Fem.
N.	два		двѣ	ó́ба	ó́бѣ
G.	двухъ			обо́ихъ	об'е́ихъ
D.	двумъ			обо́имъ	об'е́имъ
A.	= N. or G.			= N. or G.	
I.	двумя́			обо́ими	об'е́ими
L.	двухъ			обо́ихъ	об'е́ихъ

	три = *three*,	четы́ре = *four*.
N.	три	четы́ре
G.	трёхъ	четырёхъ
D.	трёмъ	четырёмъ
A.	= N. or G.	= N. or G.
I.	тремя́	четырьмя́
L.	трёхъ	четырёхъ

Substantives of any gender which follow два, три, and четы́ре, as well as all numerals compounded with these three, are invariably in the gen. sing., not in the nom. pl. The reason for this is that два originally took the dual and the nom. dual masc. ended in -а, i. e. was in appearance identical with the gen. sing. When the dual became obsolete the ending -а still continued to be used after два but came to be looked on as the gen. sing. Subsequently through analogical influence the gen. sing. of feminine nouns was used after двѣ, and also the gen. sing. of nouns of all genders came to be used after три and четыре as well as after два. The old dual is still apparent in the word двѣ́сти = 200; e. g.

два бра́та = *two brothers*
три стола́ = *three tables*
двѣ сестры́ = *two sisters* (nom. pl. = сёстры)
четы́ре села́ = *four villages* (nom. pl. = сёла)
два́дцать два́ го́да = *twenty-two years*
сто три рубля́ = *one hundred and three roubles*, &c.

If an adjective comes between the numeral and the noun, it can be in either the nom. pl. or the gen. pl., not in the singular, as might be expected, e. g.

двѣ краси́выя (or краси́выхъ) дѣ́вочки = *two pretty little girls*
три больши́е (or больши́хъ) до́ма = *three large houses*.

The effect of putting the numeral after the noun is to make the former somewhat indefinite:

дня два = *about two days, two or three days*
го́да четы́ре = *about four years*.

Of course, if used in any other case but the nominative, both numeral and substantive, and when there is an adjective, that also, agree, the regular cases of the plural being used, e. g.

N. два ма́ленькіе ма́льчика = *two little boys*
G. двухъ ма́ленькихъ ма́льчиковъ = *of two little boys*
D. двумъ ма́ленькимъ ма́льчикамъ = *to* ,, ,, ,, &c.

N. три сестры́ = *three sisters*
G. трёхъ сестёръ = *of* „
D. трёмъ сёстрамъ = *to* „
or сестра́мъ, &c.

As regards о́ба, о́бѣ the masc. and neut. take the gen. sing., but the fem. takes the nom. pl., hence:

о́ба бра́та
о́ба села́ (nom. pl. would be сёла)
but о́бѣ сёстры (gen. sing. would be сестры́).

Пять = *five*, and all numerals ending in -ь up to and including тридцать:

	Masc. Neut. Fem.
N.	пять
G.	пяти́
D.	пяти́
A.	пять
I.	пятью́
L.	пяти́

N.B. во́семь has G. D. L. восьми́ and I. восемью́.

Пятьдеся́ть = *fifty*, шестьдесять = *sixty*, се́мьдесять = *seventy*, во́семьдесять = *eighty*:

	Masc. Neut. Fem.
N.	пятьдеся́ть
G.	пяти́десяти
D.	пяти́десяти
A.	пятьдеся́ть
I.	пятью́десятью
L.	пяти́десяти

The numbers from пять onwards are really feminine nouns, equivalent for example to the French *une cinquaine.*

The numbers from 11–19 are composed of the single numerals and ten joined together by на = *on to*, e. g.

трина́дцать = три на десять = *three on to ten.*

Два́дцать and три́дцать are *two-tens* and *three-tens.*

In пятьдеся́ть, шестьдеся́ть, се́мьдесять and во́семьдесять the -десять is an old gen. pl. and пятьдеся́ть might be translated in French *une cinquaine de dizaines.*

Со́рокъ = *forty* (from the Greek τεσσαράκοντα) is declined like столъ, i. e.

G. сорока́
D. сороку́, &c.,

and девяно́сто = *ninety* and сто = *one hundred* are declined like a hard neuter noun except when followed by a noun, when they have only one ending for all the cases, viz. -а, e. g.

ста рубля́ми = *with a hundred roubles.*
въ сорока́ слу́чаяхъ = *in forty cases.*

Also when compounded with other numerals, e. g.

въ ста шести́ дома́хъ = *in one hundred and six houses.*

Дв'е́сти = 200, три́ста = 300, четы́реста = 400, пятьсо́тъ = 500, &c.

N.	дв'е́сти	три́ста	четы́реста	пятьсо́тъ
G.	двухъ сотъ	трёхъ сотъ	четырёхъ сотъ	пяти́ сотъ
D.	двумъ стамъ	трёмъ стамъ	четырёмъ стамъ	пяти́ стамъ
A.	= N. or G.			
I.	двумя́ ста́ми	тремя́ ста́ми	четырьмя́ ста́ми	пятью́ ста́ми
L.	двухъ стахъ	трёхъ стахъ	четырёхъ стахъ	пяти́ стахъ

Ты́сяча is declined like a feminine noun in -ча

	Singular.	*Plural.*	
N.	ты́сяча	e. g. дв'е́ ты́сячи	пять ты́сячъ
G.	ты́сячи	двухъ ты́сячъ	пяти́ ты́сячъ
D.	ты́сячѣ	двумъ ты́сячамъ	пяти́ ты́сячамъ
A.	ты́сячу	= N. or G.	
I.	ты́сячей (also ты́сячью)	двумя́ ты́сячами	пятью́ ты́сячами
L.	ты́сячѣ	двухъ ты́сячахъ	пяти́ тысячахъ

милліо́нъ is declined like столъ, but with the accent fixed on the third syllable throughout.

The substantives which follow all numerals ending in -ъ from 5 onwards, except compounds of 1, 2, 3, and 4, such as 21, 32, 44, &c., provided the numerals are in the nom. or acc., are always in the gen. pl. The reason for this is that, as has already been stated, пять, &c., are really feminine substantives, and so the noun following is naturally put in the gen. pl. This can be seen in the word пятьдесятъ = 50, which is really a nom. sing. (пять) followed by a (now obsolete) gen. pl. (десять) and means *a five of tens.* If followed by any other cases than the nom. or acc. both numeral

and substantive agree, as in the case of два, три, &c. Besides the numerals which end in -ь, со́рокъ = 40, сто = 100, дв̀ести = 200, три́ста = 300, &c., ты́сяча = 1,000, and милліо́нъ come under the above rule, e. g.

пять рубле́й = *five roubles*
де́сять дне́й = *ten days*
but N.B. съ пятью́ дѣтьми́ = *with five children.*

§ 62. Cardinal Numbers in Composition.

Оди́нъ makes одно-, e. g. однодво́рецъ = *freeholder* (peasant).

Два makes дву- and двух-, e. g. двугла́вый = *double-headed*, двусмы́сленный = *ambiguous*, двулѣ́тній = *two-year-old*, but двухэта́жный = *two-storied* (*house*), двухмѣ́стный = *having two seats.*

Три makes тре- in треуго́льный = *three-cornered*, otherwise трёх-; e. g. трёхлѣ́тній = *three-year-old*, трёхрублёвый = *of three roubles.*

Четы́ре makes четверо- in четвероуго́льный = *four-cornered, square*, otherwise четырёх-; e. g. четырехэта́жный = *of four floors.*

All others end in -и, e. g. семилѣ́тняя война́ = *the seven years' war.*

Notice the forms: двою́родный братъ = *first cousin* (masc.)
двою́родная сестра́ = „ „ (fem.)
трою́родный, &c. = *second cousin.*

For numerals in composition in the expression of money-values, cf. § 69.

§ 63. Ordinal Numbers.

The ordinal numbers are declined like attributive adjectives, второ́й, шесто́й, седьмо́й, восьмо́й, and сороковой like молодо́й, тре́тій like ры́бій, and the rest like бѣ́лый. The ordinals have no short or predicative form, hence

я пе́рвый = *I am the first.*

The following idiomatic uses of the ordinals may be observed:

во-пе́рвыхъ = *firstly, in the first place*
во-вторы́хъ = *secondly*
во-тре́тьихъ = *thirdly*
самъ-тре́тій = *I and two others*
самъ-четвёртый = *I and three others.*

For the use of the ordinals in the expression of time, cf. § 68.

§ 64. Distributive Numbers.

These are expressed by prefixing the preposition по to the cardinal numbers; два, три, четы́ре, and со́рокъ remain in the nom. and the following substantive in the gen. sing. or plur., but all the other numbers are put in the dat. with the substantive in the dat. after оди́нъ and in the gen. plur. after all the others, e. g.

онъ подари́лъ намъ по одно́й кни́гѣ = *he gave us one book each*

у на́съ по́ двѣ, у ва́съ по́ три, а у ни́хъ по четы́ре соба́ки = *we have two, you have three, and they have four dogs each*

у обо́ихъ по пяти́ лошаде́й = *they have both five horses each.*

For the use of the distributives in the expression of money-values, cf. § 69.

§ 65. Multiplicative Numerals.

These are expressed as follows:

разъ	= *once* (lit. = *a blow*)
два ра́за	= *twice* (lit. = *two blows*)
три ра́за	= *thrice*
четы́ре ра́за	= *four times*
пять разъ	= *five times.*

шесть разъ, &c.; разъ is the old gen. plur. still used in a few phrases of this kind where it had become crystallized; the gen. plur. in -овъ originally belonged to only a few nouns, but became general gradually.

In counting (for games, music, &c.) the formula is: разъ, два, три, четы́ре = *one, two, three, four.*

The three words одна́жды = *once,* два́жды = *twice,* and три́жды = *thrice,* were borrowed from Old Bulgarian, but are almost obsolete; одна́жды is still sometimes used for *one fine day,* or *once upon a time,* but разъ or оди́нъ разъ is more usual.

Notice the following idioms in which разъ occurs:

ско́лько разъ (gen. pl.) = *how many times, how often*

мно́го разъ (gen. pl.) = *many times*

нѣ́сколько разъ (gen. pl.) = *several times*

сра́зу (gen. sing.) = *all at once, suddenly*

and especially the difference between:

нера́зъ = *more than once*

e. g. я нера́зъ говори́лъ . . . = *I have said more than once . . .*

and ни ра́зу не . . . = *not once*

e. g. онъ ни ра́зу не́-былъ у на́съ = *he has not once been at our house.*

The expression *twice as* is rendered by въ-двóе with the comparative, e. g.

э́то винó въ-двóе лу́чше тогó = *this wine is twice as good as that.*

ва́ше перó въ-трóе дорóже моегó = *your pen is three times as dear as mine.*

For larger numbers it is more usual to turn it, e. g.

э́тотъ теáтръ въ ты́сячу разъ краси́вѣе чѣмъ тотъ = *this theatre is a thousand times more beautiful than that.*

Expressions such as *ten-fold*, used predicatively, are rendered by въ-деся́теро, &c.

The adjectival multiplicatives:

двойнóй = *double, two-fold,*
тройнóй = *treble, three-fold,*

are quite common and are declined like молодóй.

Simple = простóй.

§ 66. **Collective Numerals.**

These are used for the numbers from 2-8 and 10:

2	двóе	6	шéстеро
3	трóе	7	сéмеро
4	чéтверо	8	вóсьмеро
5	пя́теро	10	дéсятеро

двóе and трóе are declined as follows:

N. двóе
G. двои́хъ
D. двои́мъ.
A. = N. or G.
I. двои́ми
L. двои́хъ

the others:

N. чéтверо
G. четверы́хъ
D. четверы́мъ
A. = N. or G.
I. четверы́ми
L. четверы́хъ

These numerals are especially common in phrases such as the following:

насъ тро́е = *there are three of us*, which also means *we three* (it would be impossible to say мы три), у меня́ че́тверо дѣте́й = *I have four children*, ихъ бы́ло ше́стеро = *there were* (lit. *was*) *six of them*, and with nouns which are only used in the plural, e. g. са́ни = *sledge*, ше́стеро сане́й = *six sledges*, часы́ = *watch, clock*, тро́е часо́въ = *three watches*. Notice со́тня = 100 (often sc. *soldiers*).

N.B. въ-двоёмъ = *tête-à-tête*
въ троёмъ = *à trois*
па́ра (лошаде́й) = *a pair of horses*
тройка = *three horses abreast*
четвёрка = *four* „ „
Тро́ица = *the Trinity*
дю́жина = *a dozen*, but must only be used of things, never of people
деся́токъ = *ten*, e. g. деся́тки ты́сячъ = *tens of thousands*
близнецы́ = *twins*.

Notice the curious idiom я самъ-другъ = *I and another*.

двойка	= *deuce* (at cards)	семёрка	= *seven*
тройка	= *three*	восьмёрка	= *eight*
четвёрка	= *four*	девя́тка	= *nine*
пятёрка	= *five*	деся́тка	= *ten*.
шестёрка	= *six*		

For the use of the collectives as multiplicatives cf. § 65.

§ 67. Fractions.

Полови́на = *a half*, and is declined like a hard fem. noun, with the accent fixed on the third syllable.

$2\frac{1}{2}$ = два (or двѣ) съ полови́ной
$3\frac{1}{2}$ = три съ полови́ной, &c.

For $1\frac{1}{2}$ there is a special word:

полтора́ (made up of пол- and второ́й = *half-second*) for the masculine, and полторы́ for the feminine, e. g.

N. полтора́ фу́нта (gen. sing.) = $1\frac{1}{2}$ *lb.*
полторы́ сажени „ „ = $1\frac{1}{2}$ *fathom.*

For all the other cases the form полу́тора is used for both genders, the noun being declined in the plural, e. g. полу́тора фунта́ми.

150 = полтора́ста

N. полтора́ста
G. D. I. L. полу́тораста

Half- in composition is treated as follows:

N. полфу́нта = ½ *lb.*
G. полуфу́нта
D. полуфу́нту
A. = N.
I. полуфу́нтомъ
L. полуфу́нтѣ

The plural is полуфунты́, &c., like an ordinary hard masculine noun.

полрю́мки = *half a wine-glass* would be declined similarly, but with the feminine substantival endings.

For по́лдень and по́лночь cf. § 68.

⅓ = треть, a feminine noun declined like ло́шадь but with the accent fixed on the first syllable;
⅔ = двѣ тре́ти;
¼ = че́тверть, feminine, declined like треть;
¾ = три че́тверти.

Other fractions are expressed as follows:

⅕ = одна́ пя́тая (sc. часть = *part*);
⅖ = двѣ пя́тыхъ;
⅝ = три седьмы́хъ.

§ 68. Expression of Time.

Часъ = *hour* (N.B. часы́ = *watch* or *clock*)

what time is it? = кото́рый часъ?
at what hour...? = въ кото́ромъ часу́ . . . ? (cf. § 39, obs. 7)
1 *o'clock* = часъ (sc. пе́рвый = *first*)
at „ = въ часъ
1.15 = часъ съ че́твертью (= 1¼)
or че́тверть второ́го (= ¼ *of the 2nd*)
1.5 = пять мину́ть второ́го (= *5 min. of the 2nd*)
1.30 = полови́на второ́го
or второ́го полови́на
at 1.30 = въ полови́ну второ́го

1.45 = безъ че́тверти два (= *without* $\frac{1}{4}$ 2)
at 1.45 = „ „ „
or въ часъ со́рокъ пять
2 *o'clock* = два часа́
at „ = въ два часа́
at about „ = часа́ въ два
2.10 = де́сять мину́ть тре́тьяго
2.30 = полови́на тре́тьяго
3 *o'clock* = три часа́
3.50 = безъ десяти́ (мину́ть) четы́ре
4 *o'clock* = четы́ре часа́
5 „ = пять часо́въ
10.30 = полови́на оди́ннадцатаго
12 *o'clock* = двѣна́дцать часо́въ
12.15 = че́тверть пе́рваго
12.30 = полови́на пе́рваго
12.45 = безъ че́тверти часъ
12.55 = безъ пяти́ (мину́ть) часъ.

half-an-hour = полчаса́
2 *hours* = два часа́
$2\frac{1}{2}$ *hours* = два часа́ съ полови́ной
$1\frac{1}{2}$ *hour* = полтора́ часа́.

Notice especially the word су́тки (nom. pl. fem.) = *the* 24 *hours, a day and night*, e. g.

тро́е су́токъ (gen. pl.) = 72 *hours*
цѣ́лыя су́тки = *a whole* 24 *hours*
четы́ре су́токъ = *four days and nights*
пять су́токъ = *five* „ „

minute = мину́та
'one minute' = одну́ мину́ту, мину́точку
'this minute' = сію́ мину́ту
second = секу́нда
this instant = сію́ секу́нду
or сей-часъ
in one minute = въ одну́ мину́ту
in five minutes = че́резъ пять мину́ть
in two hours = че́резъ два часа́

N.B. чéрезъ can also give the meaning *every other*:

чéрезъ часъ = (1) *in an hour's time*
(2) *every other hour.*

Notice the difference between:

about two hours = óколо (adv.) два часá
about two o'clock = óколо (prep.) двухъ часóвъ
every minute (*incessantly*) = по-минýтно

пóлдень = *midday*
Gen. полýдня
Loc. полýдни

The phrase по-полýдни = *after noon* is very common, as Russian has no single word for *afternoon*, e. g.

at 4 p.m. = въ 4 ч. по-полýдни
in the afternoon = (1) по-полýдни
(2) днёмъ (inst. of день)

пóлночь = *midnight*
Gen. полýночи.

N.B. *half-a-day* = полдня́
half-a-night = полнóчи
daily (adj.) = ежеднéвный
(adv.) = ежеднéвно.

The days of the week are:

Воскресéніе = *Sunday* (lit. = *resurrection*)
понедѣ́льникъ = *Monday* (= *after the holiday*)
втóрникъ = *Tuesday* (cf. второ́й)
средá = *Wednesday* (= *centre*)
четвéргъ = *Thursday* (cf. четвёртый)
пя́тница = *Friday* (cf. пя́тый)
суббóта = *Saturday* (= *Sabbath*).

on Sunday = въ Воскресéніе
on Monday = въ понедѣ́льникъ
N.B. *on Tuesday* = во втóрникъ
on Wednesday = въ срéду
on Thursday = въ четвéргъ
on Friday = въ пя́тницу
on Saturday = въ суббóту
on Sundays = по Воскресéніямъ, &c.

week = недѣля
fortnight = двѣ недѣли
this week = э́ту недѣлю
every week = ка́ждую недѣлю
for a week = на недѣлю
weekly = еженедѣльный.

Notice the idiom :

ту недѣлю = *next week* or *last week* (lit. *that week*)
на той недѣлѣ = ,, ,, (sc. *in* or *during* . . .).

The months are :

янва́рь	= *January*	ію́ль	= *July*
февра́ль	= *February*	а́вгусть	= *August*
ма́рть	= *March*	сентя́брь	= *September*
апрѣ́ль	= *April*	октя́брь	= *October*
ма́й	= *May*	ноя́брь	= *November*
ію́нь	= *June*	дека́брь	= *December*

they are all masculine.

in January = въ январѣ́
in May = въ ма́ѣ.

In the words for the first two and the last four months the accent is always on the ending, in the others it remains throughout where it is in the nominative.

Month = мѣ́сяцъ
monthly = ежемѣ́сячный
the date = число́
Jan. 1st = пе́рвое января́ (sc. число́)
on Feb. 2nd = второ́го февраля́ (sc. числа́)
on March 3rd = тре́тьяго ма́рта
of the fifth of April (e.g. letter) = оть пя́таго апрѣ́ля
on May 21st = два́дцать-пе́рваго ма́я
on June 30th = тридца́таго ію́ня
on July 31st = три́дцать-пе́рваго ію́ля
what date is it to-day? = како́е (or кото́рое) сего́дня число́ ?
year = годъ
half-year = полго́да
two years = два го́да
three years = три го́да
four years = четы́ре го́да

but *five years* = пять лѣтъ (lit. = *summers*)
six years = шесть лѣтъ
till *twenty-one years* = двадцать-одинъ годъ
twenty-two years = двадцать-два́ го́да
twenty-five years = двадцать-пя́ть лѣтъ
&c.
how old are you? = ско́лько вамъ лѣтъ?
twenty-three = двадцать-три́ го́да
this year = въ э́томъ году́
last year = въ про́шломъ году́
last year's = прошлого́дный
next year = въ бу́дущемъ году́
in the year 1899 = въ ты́сяча восемь со́ть девяно́сто девя́томъ году́ (i. e. only the last numeral is an ordinal)
in the year 1914 = въ (ты́сяча) де́вять соть четы́рнадцатомъ году́
of the year 1900 = ты́сяча де́вять со́таго го́да
the twenties = двадца́тые го́ды
of the thirties = тридца́тыхъ годо́въ
in the forties = въ сороковы́хъ года́хъ

(but only of historical periods, not of personal age)

century = (1) вѣкъ
(2) столѣ́тіе.

Ago is expressed in two ways: (1) by за with the acc., e. g.
за́ два го́да = *two years ago*
or (2) by тому́ наза́дъ (= *to it back*), e. g.
пять лѣтъ тому́ наза́дъ = *five years ago*

in a year's time = черезъ годъ
every other year = (1) черезъ годъ
(2) ка́ждые два го́да
every year = ка́ждый годъ
yearly = ежего́дный

Вре́мя = *Time*
со вре́менемъ = *in time, gradually*
врёмя отъ вре́мени = *from time to time*
во вре́мя (+ gen.) = *during*
во́-время = *in time* (sc. *punctually*)

пора́	= *it is time*
пора́ми	= *at times*
поро́й	= ,,
съ тѣхъ поръ	= *from that time on*
до тѣхъ поръ	= *till then*
до сихъ поръ	= *till now*
съ какихъ поръ ?	= *since when ?*
but въ-по́ру	= *it fits* (of clothes, &c.)
не въ-по́ру	= *it does not fit.*

§ 69. **Expression of money-values.**

Полти́нникъ	= ½ *rouble* (= 50 *kopeks*)
рубль	= *a rouble* (= 1*s.* 11*d.*)
полтора́ рубля́	= 1½ *rouble*
два рубля́	= 2 *roubles*
два съ полти́ной	= 2½ *roubles*
пять рубле́й	= 5 *roubles*
пять съ полти́ной	= 5½ *roubles*
копѣ́йка	= *a kopek* (= ¼*d.*)[1]
двѣ копѣ́йки	= 2 *kopeks*
пять копѣ́екъ	= 5 *kopeks*

60 *kopeks* = шестьдеся́ть копѣ́екъ
or шесть гри́венъ
70 ,, = се́мьдесять копѣ́екъ
or семь гри́венъ
80 ,, = во́семьдесять копѣ́екъ
or во́семь гри́венъ.

The following are the colloquial names of the current coins and notes:

пята́к	= 5 *kopeks* (copper)
пятачо́къ	= ,, (nickel)
гри́венникъ	= 10 ,, ,,
пятиалты́нный	= 15 ,, (nickel ; алты́нь = 3 *kopeks*)
двугри́венникъ	= 20 ,, ,,
полти́на	= 50 ,, (silver)
цѣлко́вый (or рубль)	= 1 *rouble* ,,

[1] Also spelt копе́йка, gen. pl, копе́екъ.

трёхрублёвая бума́жка = 3-*rouble note*
пятирублёвая бума́жка or си́ненькая (*little blue*) = 5-*rouble note*
десятирублёвая бума́жка or кра́сненькая (*little red*) = 10 „ „
двадцатипятирублёвая бума́жка = 25 „ „
сторублёвая бума́жка or ра́дужная (*rainbow*) = 100 „ „

одноко́пѣечная ма́рка = *a* 1-*kopek stamp*
дву́х——— „ = *a* 2-*kopek* „
трёх——— „ = *a* 3-*kopek* „
четырёх——— „ = *a* 4-*kopek* „
семи́——— „ = *a* 7-*kopek* „
десяти́——— „ = *a* 10-*kopek* „

The preposition по followed by a numeral = *at . . .*; the numerals are in the dat., or acc., cf. § 61:

двѣ ма́рки по одно́й копѣ́йкѣ = *two* 1-*kopek stamps*
пять ма́рокъ по́-двѣ копѣ́йки = *five* 2-*kopek* „
де́сять ма́рокъ по-семи́ копѣ́екъ = *ten* 7-*kopek* „
(or де́сять семи́копѣечныхъ ма́рокъ, &c.).

The question *at what price?* is expressed by the idiom почём? e. g.

по-чёмъ э́ти га́лстуки? = *at what price* (sc. *how much*) (*are*) *these neckties?*
по́-два рубля́ = *two roubles each*
по-пяти́ рубле́й = *five roubles each.*

For the use of the preposition въ with similar meaning cf. § 65.

THE ADVERB

§ 70. The adverb is generally the same as the nominative singular neuter of the predicative adjective, e. g.

ми́лый	ми́лая	ми́лое	= *nice*; attributive form
милъ	мила́	ми́ло	= „ predicative form
		ми́ло	= *nicely*
хоро́шій	хоро́шая	хоро́шее	= *good, nice*

хоро́шъ хороша́ хорошо́ = *good, nice*
хорошо́ = *well ; all right.*

Similarly: пло́хо = *badly*
ду́рно = „
скве́рно = „
нехорошо́ = „ &c.

Soft adjectives form the adverb with -е instead of -о, e. g.

кра́йній = *extreme* кра́йне = *extremely*
и́скренній = *sincere* и́скренне = *sincerely*

but many of them take -о like the hard adjectives, e. g.

ра́нній = *early* ра́но = *early* (adv.)
по́здній = *late* по́здно = *late* (adv.)
да́вній = *former* давно́ = *long ago*

и́скренній also makes и́скренно.

Owing to the fact that the present tense of the verb *to be* is almost quite obsolete in Russian, the adverb is very frequently used as an impersonal verb forming a sentence by itself, e. g.

ра́но = *it is early* (often = *too early*)
по́здно = *it is late* (often = *too late*)
жа́рко = *it is hot*
тепло́ = *it is warm*
бли́зко = *it is near*
высоко́ = *it is high*
хорошо́, что вы пришли́ = *it is well* (or *nice*) *that you have come*
возмо́жно, что онъ придётъ = *it is possible, that he will come*
невозмо́жно, чтобы онъ пришёлъ = *it is impossible, that he should come.*

Several adverbs can be accented in two ways, each equally correct, e. g.

темно́ or тёмно = *it is dark*
холодно́ or хо́лодно = *it is cold*
далеко́ or далёко = *it is far*
глубоко́ or глубо́ко = *it is deep* (also = *deeply* figuratively).

Adjectives in -скій form the adverb by changing -скій into -ски, e. g.

ирони́ческій = *ironical*
ирони́чески = *ironically*

similarly: поэти́чески = *poetically*
дру́жески = *in a friendly way, warmly*
хрони́чески = *chronically*, &c.

The preposition по- prefixed to such adverbs gives the meaning *in the manner of*:

по-прія́тельски = *in a friendly way*
по-моско́вски = *in Moscow fashion*

and if the adverb is one formed from the name of a nationality it can also mean *in . . .*, e. g.

по-ру́сски = *in Russian*
по-а́нглійски = *in English*
по-нѣме́цки = *in German*
по-францу́зски = *in French*

e. g. я умѣ́ю по-ру́сски or я говорю́ по-ру́сски = *I can* (sc. *talk*) *Russian*, or *I talk Russian*

я не понима́ю по-нѣме́цки = *I don't understand German.*

Notice the idiom:

э́то по-како́вски? = *in what language is that?*

Otherwise adverbial expressions with по- are formed by using the dative singular of the adjective or pronoun, e. g.

по-но́вому = *in modern fashion*
по-ста́рому = *in old fashion*
по-сво́ему = *in one's own way*
по-мо́ему = *in my own way* or *in my opinion*
(notice the accent)
по-ва́шему = *in your way* or *in your opinion*
по-вое́нному = *in military fashion.*

Cf. also § 73.

§ 71. Adverbs of Place.

здѣ́сь, тутъ[1] = *here*
тамъ = *there*
вездѣ́, (по)всю́ду[1] = *everywhere*
гдѣ́ = *where*
нигдѣ́ = *nowhere*

[1] Rather colloquial than literary.

e. g. нигдѣ нѣтъ мѣста = *there is no place* (or *room*) *anywhere*
нигдѣ никого нѣтъ = *there is no one anywhere*

негдѣ = *there is nowhere to . . .*

e. g. негдѣ сѣсть = *there is no place to sit down*

гдѣ-то = *somewhere, in a certain place* (sc. *I don't remember where, I don't know where*, or *I don't wish to say where*)

e. g. онъ гдѣ-то въ Россіи = *he is somewhere in Russia*

гдѣ-нибудь = *somewhere, anywhere*

e. g. онъ проведётъ зиму гдѣ-нибудь за-границей = *he will spend the winter somewhere abroad*

гдѣ-бы то ни было = *wherever you like*
тамъ и сямъ = *here and there.*

The adverbs *hither*, &c., are far more frequently used in Russian than in English; in English we say *I am going there*, but in Russian always *I am going thither*; in English *where have you put my book?* but in Russian *whither*, &c.; in English *where did you get that hat?* but in Russian *whence*, &c.

сюда = *hither*

e. g. пойди сюда = *come here*

туда = *thither*

e. g. я иду туда = *I am going there*

куда = *whither*

e. g. куда вы положили мою книгу? = *where have you put my book?*

никуда = *nowhither*

e. g. я никуда не иду = *I am not going anywhere*

некуда = *there is no place whither*

e. g. некуда итти = *there is nowhere to go to*

куда-то = *somewhither*

e. g. онъ куда-то ушёлъ = *he has gone off somewhere*

куда-нибудь = *somewhither*

e. g. пойдёмъ куда-нибудь = *let's go somewhere* (*anywhere*)

куда-бы то ни было = *whithersoever*

отсюда = *hence*

e. g. отсюда до Москвы далеко = *from here to Moscow it is far*

оттуда = *thence*

e. g. оттуда до насъ пять вёрстъ = *it is five versts from there to us*

откýда = *whence*

e. g. вы откýда ? = *where do you come from ?*

откýда-то = *somewhence*

откýда-нибудь = *somewhence*

e. g. достáньте откýда-нибудь = *get from somewhere* (*no matter where*)

откýда-бы то нибыло = *whencesoever.*

Notice the following very idiomatic uses of гдѣ and кудá, e. g.

гдѣ мнѣ э́то сдѣ́лать ! = *I shall never be able to do that !*

гдѣ вамъ ! = *how can you think of it !*

э́тотъ гóродъ кудá бóльше тогó = *this town is ever so much bigger than that*

э́то винó хоть кудá = *this wine is simply splendid*

гдѣ . . ., гдѣ . . . = *in one place . . ., in another . . .*

Notice : наверхý = *up above*, sc. *upstairs*

внизý = *down below*, sc. *downstairs*

вверхъ = *up(wards)*

внизъ = *down(wards)*

снарýжи = *outside, outwardly*

внутрú = *inside, inwardly.*

§ 72. Adverbs of Time.

тепéрь = *now*

тогдá = *then*

всегдá = *always*

когдá = *when*

никогдá = *never*

e. g. никогдá не ѣмъ мя́са = *I never eat meat*

нéкогда = *there is no time to . . .*

e. g. мнѣ тепéрь нéкогда ! = *I've no time for that now !*

нѣ́когда = *formerly, sometime*

иногдá = *at times, sometimes*

когдá-то = *formerly, a long time ago* (sc. *I don't remember exactly when*)

e. g. онъ когдá-то былъ женáть = *he was married once* (sc. *his wife is now dead or has disappeared*)

когдá-нибудь = *some time*

e. g. загляни́те къ намъ когдá-нибудь ! = *look us up some time or other*

когда́-бы то ни́ было = *whenever you like*
снача́ла = *at first*
наконе́цъ = *at last*
уже́ = *already*
нѣ́ть ещё } = *not yet*
ещё не }
уже́ нѣ́ть, уже́ не = *no longer*

e. g. его́ уже́ нѣ́ть здѣ́сь = *he is already gone, he is no longer here*

наконе́цъ = *at last*
ужо́, пото́мъ = *later on*
ско́ро = *soon, quickly*
сно́ва, опя́ть = *again*
по-скоре́е = *as quickly as possible, hurry up!*
до́лго = *a long time*
онъ до́лго не идётъ = *he is a long time in coming*
да́вно́ } = *long ago, long since*
давни́мъ-давно́ }
сей-ча́съ } = *immediately*
то́ть-часъ }
сію мину́ту }
тре́тьяго дня = *the day before yesterday*
вчера́ = *yesterday*
сего́дня = *to-day*
за́втра = *to-morrow*
по́слѣ-за́втра = *the day after to-morrow.*

§ 73. Adverbs of Manner.

такъ = *thus*
какъ = *how, as, like*
ника́къ = (1) *in no wise, by no means*
e. g. ника́къ нѣ́ть = *not at all*
ника́къ нельзя́ = *it is quite out of the question,*

as an interrogative conjunction:

= (2) *perhaps, as likely as not*
ника́къ онъ придётъ = *perhaps he will come.*

The following also is used more as an interrogative conjunction:

нека́къ = *I expect, as likely as not*
нека́къ е́дутъ = *I think they're coming*

нека́къ приходи́лъ кто́-то ? = *has any one been ?*
ка́къ-то = *somehow, sort of, somehow or other*

e. g. мнѣ ка́къ-то не хо́чется = *somehow or other (I can't explain why) I don't want to*

э́то стра́нно ка́къ-то = *it's queer somehow*

ка́къ-то can also mean *for instance*, and is used as an alternative for the expression какъ напримѣ́ръ = *as for example* ;

ка́къ-нибудь = *somehow or other, by hook or by crook*

e. g. устро́йте э́то ка́къ-нибудь = *arrange this (matter) by some means or other*

пріѣзжа́йте къ намъ ка́къ-нибудь лѣ́томъ = *come and see us in the summer if you possibly can*

э́то на́до сдѣ́лать ка́къ-нибудь = *(we) must do this somehow or other*

ка́къ-бы то ни́было = *however that may be*

ина́че (or и́наче) = *otherwise, differently*

э́то на́до устро́ить ина́че = *this must be arranged differently*

учи́сь хорошенько, ина́че тебя́ нака́жутъ = *learn your lesson well, otherwise they'll punish you*

не та́къ = *differently*, but very often sc. *wrong* (adv.) ; although there is a word for *incorrectly*, viz. непра́вильно, the most common way of saying *wrong* is не та́къ, e. g.

вы не та́къ сдѣ́лали = *you have done it wrong*
онъ не та́къ пое́халъ = *he has taken the wrong road*
вы не такъ ска́зали = *you have said it wrong*
я не такъ по́нялъ его́ = *I misunderstood him*

though of course the same expression is often used to mean *not thus* literally.

Notice the very common adverbs :

вдругъ = *suddenly*
постепе́нно, ма́ло-по-ма́лу } = *gradually*
напра́сно = *in vain* (often sc. *it is a pity that*)
наро́чно = *on purpose*
нечая́нно = *unintentionally*
случа́йно = *accidentally*
осо́бенно = *especially*
вообще́ = *in general*
и́менно = *namely*
дѣ́йстви́тельно = *actually, in very fact, indeed*
коне́чно = *of course*
навѣ́рно = *surely, certainly*
слѣ́довательно = *consequently*
непремѣ́нно = *without fail*
безпреста́нно = *incessantly*

включи́тельно = *inclusively*
исключи́тельно = *exclusively*
безусло́вно = *absolutely*
обыкнове́нно = *usually*
необыкнове́нно, чрезвыча́йно = *unusually, uncommonly*

and the idioms:

такъ и сякъ = *this way and that*
ни такъ ни сякъ = *neither this way nor that*
такъ себѣ́ = *so-so, fairly, middling*
ничего́ = " " "
такъ = *gratis, for nothing, for fun*
я э́то то́лько такъ сказа́лъ = *I didn't mean it*
такъ то́чно = *just so* (often used by servants = *yes*)
то́чно такъ = *just like that*
то́чно = (1) *it is just as if*
онъ то́чно въ неё влюблёнъ = *one would think he was in love with her*
= (2) *really, truly, exactly*
у меня́ соба́ка то́чно така́я = *I've got a dog just like that*
ро́вно = *exactly*
ро́вно въ два часа́ = *exactly at two o'clock.*

Cf. also § 70.

Note on the use of то after adverbs of place, time, and manner.

It should be mentioned that то is often used enclitically after interrogative adverbs, not to express indefiniteness, but merely as an expletive, as much as to say, *I wonder*, e. g.

гдѣ́-то они́ тепе́рь! = *I wonder where they are now!*
когда́-то мы увиди́мся! = *I wonder when we shall meet again!*
ка́къ-то онъ устро́ится! = *I wonder how he'll settle his affairs!*

After definitive adverbs its use implies *surprise*, e. g.

тепе́рь-то я понима́ю! = *now I understand!*
та́къ-то вы по́няли меня́! = *is it thus that you understood me!* (i. e. *thought what I meant*).

§ 74. Adverbs of Degree and Quantity.

мно́го = *much*
немно́го, dimin. немно́жко, ма́ло = *little*

e. g. дайте мнѣ немно́го вина́ (gen.) = *give me a little wine*
ещё немно́жко? = *a little more?*

э́то ма́ло! = *that's little* (sc. *too little*)!
э́то мно́го! = *that's much* (sc. *too much*)!
въ э́той кни́гѣ ма́ло хоро́шаго = *in this book there's but little good*
у меня́ немно́го де́негъ = *I have a little money* (with emphasis on де́негъ)
у меня́ немно́го денегъ
у меня́ де́негъ немно́го } = *I have but little money*
у меня́ ма́ло де́негъ
(with emphasis on немно́го)

(for the declension of the plural мно́гіе, &c., cf. § 54, obs. 9)

ско́лько = *as much, how much*
ско́лько э́то сто́итъ? = *how much does this cost?*
я помога́ю ему́, ско́лько могу́ = *I help him as much as I can*
сто́лько = *so much*
онъ былъ сто́лько разъ у меня́, что наконе́цъ онъ мнѣ надое́лъ = *he has been so many times to see me, that at last I've got sick of him*
ско́лько голо́въ, сто́лько умо́въ = *so many heads, so many minds*
то́лько = *only*
не то́лько = *not only.*

Notice the idioms:

да и то́лько
то́лько и всего́ } = *and that's all*
не хочу́, да и то́лько = *I don't want to, and that's all about it*
ниско́лько = *not in the least* (always with the negative repeated)
я ниско́лько не хочу́ = *I don't want to in the least*
ско́лько-нибудь = *at all*
е́сли онъ ско́лько-нибудь поря́дочный челове́къ = *if he is at all a decent fellow*
не́сколько = *some, a few, somewhat*
не́сколько разъ = *several times*
„ рубле́й = *a few roubles*
у него́ не́сколько де́тей = *he has several children*
э́та шля́па не́сколько доро́же = *this hat is rather dearer*
гора́здо = *ever so much*
э́то изда́ніе гора́здо деше́вле = *this edition is ever so much cheaper*
дово́льно
доста́точно } = *enough, fairly*
дово́льно де́негъ = *enough money*

довóльно хóлодно = *it is fairly cold.*

(N.B. *not enough* is usually expressed by мáло, e.g. мáло дéнегъ = *not enough money*)

бóльше = *more*

у негó бóльше книгъ, чѣмъ у меня́ = *he has more books than I*

бóльше всегó = *most of all*

по-бóльше = *a good lot, rather more*

дáйте мнѣ по-бóльше (+ gen.) = *give me a good lot of . . .*

мéньше (with gen.) = *less*

мéньше всегó = *least of all*

по-мéньше (with gen.) = *as little as possible*

скорѣ́е = *rather* (sc. *sooner*)

я скорѣ́е дамъ вамъ, чѣмъ емý = *I would rather give* (lit. *shall give*) *it to you than to him*

слúшкомъ / черезчýръ } = *too, excessively*

э́то слúшкомъ мнóго = *that is too much*

э́то слúшкомъ мáло = *that is too little*

(N.B. *never* with немнóго)

слúшкомъ = *more than, above* (lit. = *with excess*)

емý слúшкомъ сóрокъ лѣ́тъ = *he is over forty*

óчень = *very, very much*

весьмá = *very, quite*

онá óчень милá = *she is very nice*

я её óчень люблю́ = *I like her very much*

я óчень хочý = *I want to very much*

у негó óчень { мнóго / мáло } дéнегъ = *he has* { *a great deal of* / *very little* } *money*

(N.B. *never* with немнóго)

вóвсе не = *not in the least*

я вóвсе не хочý = *I don't in the least want to*

почтú (что) = *almost*

почтú темнó = *it is nearly dark*

я почтú что упáлъ = *I nearly fell down*

далекó не / совсѣ́мъ не } = *far from, not nearly, not at all*

онъ далекó не богáтый человѣ́къ = *he is far from being a rich man*

я совсѣ́мъ не понимáю = *I don't understand at all*

совсѣ́мъ = *quite*
мнѣ совсѣ́мъ удо́бно = *I'm quite comfortable*
не совсѣ́мъ = *not quite*
вполнѣ́, сполна́, сплошь = *entirely*
едва́, е́ле, е́ле-е́ле, чуть, чуть-чу́ть = *scarcely, with difficulty*
онъ едва́ умѣетъ писа́ть = *he scarcely knows how to write*
она́ е́ле-е́ле хо́дитъ = *she walks with the greatest difficulty*
едва́ не, чуть не, чуть-чу́ть не = *almost*
меня́ едва́ не уби́ли = *they almost killed me*
она́ чуть-чу́ть не упа́ла = *she very nearly fell down*
(чуть-чуть alone means *the tiniest bit*)
по кра́йней мѣ́рѣ = *at least.*

Note on the Degrees of Comparison of Adverbs.

The comparative of the adverb is exactly the same as the predicative comparative of the adjective, e. g.

лу́чше = *better* (adj. and adv.)
ху́же = *worse* „ „

Specifically adverbial forms are:

бо́лѣе = *more*
ме́нѣе = *less*
} cf. §§ 57, 84.

Notice:
бо́лѣе и́ли ме́нѣе = *more or less*
ни бо́лѣе ни ме́нѣе = *neither more nor less*

and the superlative forms:

наибо́лѣе = (*the*) *most* (adv.)
наиме́нѣе = (*the*) *least* (adv.)
всего́ менѣе = *anything rather than.*

Comparatives preceded by по- are commonly used adverbially, e. g.

по-вы́ше = *higher up* (sc. *a little higher*)
по-ни́же = *lower down*
по-да́льше = *further along*
по-бли́же = *rather closer*

and cf. p. 87.

PARTICLES AND CONJUNCTIONS

§ 75. и = *and*;

often used to emphasize the preceding word, or with the meaning *just, moreover*, e. g.

я такъ и ду́малъ! = *I thought as much!*

э́того и недоставáло = *it was just this that was wanting* (= *this is the last straw*)

въ то́мъ-то и дѣ́ло = *that's just the point*

я и говори́лъ ему́ . . . = *moreover I had told him . . .*, followed by не = *not in the least*

я и не хотѣ́лъ = *I didn't in the least want to*, or *what's more I didn't want to.*

In some cases, when things are mentioned in couples, да = *and*, e. g. мужъ да женá = *husband and wife.*

It is important to notice that expressions such as *you and I* are always introduced by мы = *we*, e. g.

мы съ вáми = *you and I*
мы съ нимъ = *he and I*
мы съ сестрой = *my sister and I.*

Any antithesis can be introduced by a, e. g.

онъ хóчетъ, а я не хочý = *he wants to, but I don't* (or *and I don't*).

It can usually be rendered by the English *but* or *while*, but very often it begins a sentence and corresponds to our *now* or *and*; it takes the place of и (=*and*) whenever any antithesis is to be indicated.

да, но } = *but*

this indicates stronger antithesis than a; still stronger are

однáко, однáкоже } = *nevertheless*
всётаки = *however, after all*

-таки can be added as an enclitic to words in the sentence, e. g.

онъ таки постáвилъ на своёмъ = *he* (sc. *in spite of everything*) *would have his own way*

и́ли = *or*

вѣдь = *for, for you know that*

usually used as an expostulation at the beginning of a sentence, e. g.

вѣдь вы зна́ли, что я не хочу́ = *now look here, you knew that I didn't want to*

и — и — = *both — and —*

ни — ни — = *neither — nor —*

какъ — такъ и — = *both — and —*

и́ли — и́ли — = *either — or —*

ита́къ = *and so*

(usually used in drawing an inference)

та́кже, то́же } = *also*

да́же = *even*

ещё = *still*

вотъ = *this is . . . , here is . . . , there is . . .* (like French *voici, voilà*).

§ 76. Questions and Answers (cf. § 49).

These are introduced either by some interrogative pronoun or adverb, or by the use of the interrogative particle -ли, e. g.

кто вы? = *who are you?*

вы́-ли э́то? = *is this you?*

до́ма-ли ба́ринъ? = *is the gentleman at home?*

In ordinary conversation the -ли is often omitted, the question being indicated by raising the voice at the end of the sentence. Что is often used at the beginning of a question instead of -ли, e. g.

что мы пойдемъ? = *shall we go?*

This same question could be put in the following ways:

а что, мы пойдемъ?

пойдемъ, что́-ли?

If a negative answer is expected ра́звѣ is very often used, e. g.

ра́звѣ вы зна́ете его́? = *you don't know him, do you?*

If an affirmative answer is expected, use ра́звѣ не, e. g.

ра́звѣ вы меня́ не узна́ли? = *didn't you recognize me?*

ра́звѣ вы не хоти́те? = *do you mean to say you don't want to?*

Incredulity and *amazement* are expressed by неуже́ли, e. g.

неуже́ли э́то пра́вда! = *can this possibly be true!*

Doubt by вря́дъ-ли

вря́дъ-ли э́то такъ = *I doubt whether this is so.*

-ли — и́ли — = *whether — or —*

я не зна́ю, у́меръ-ли и́ли нѣтъ = *I don't know whether he is dead or not.*

The affirmative answer is

да = *yes*, and the negative нѣтъ = *no*,

but as often as not a question can be answered by repeating a word contained in the question, e. g.

зна́ете-ли вы его́? — зна́ю — = *do you know him? — yes, I do.*

до́ма-ли ба́рыня? — до́ма = *is the lady at home? — yes.*

Other common expressions are:

коне́чно = *of course*

ещё-бы! = *I should say so!*

§ 77. Negations.

In negative sentences the negative particle не always comes immediately before the verb if the whole sentence is negatived, but before any particular word if that word only is negatived, e. g.

я не люблю́ его́ = *I don't like him*

я люблю́ не его́, а её = *I like her, not him.*

The object, when directly governed by the negative, is always in the genitive, e. g.

онъ не лю́битъ свое́й жены́ = *he doesn't love his wife*

(but cf. § 81).

If a sentence contains any negative pronoun, adverb, or the conjunction ни — ни —, the negative particle не must be added; two negatives in Russian do not make an affirmative, e. g.

никого́ не ви́жу = *I can see no one*

ничего́ не хочу́ = *I don't want anything*

я ника́къ не ожида́лъ — = *I didn't in the least expect —*

There is not = нѣтъ

which always requires the genitive, e. g.

нѣтъ наде́жды = *there is no hope*

до́ма никого́ нѣтъ = *there is nobody at home*

Is there not? = нѣтъ-ли?

§ 78. **Subordinative Conjunctions.**

чтóбы = *in order that*
чтóбы не = *lest*
éсли = *if*
хотя́ = *although*
когда́ = *when*
пока́ = *while*
&c.

(for the use of these cf. §§ 102–5)

(какъ) бу́дто
бу́дто-бы
я́ко-бы
} = *as it were, as though;*

these are very commonly used in reporting facts, incidents, or speeches of doubtful authenticity or credibility, e. g.

онъ какъ бу́дто не хóчетъ = *I fancy he doesn't want to*
онъ говори́тъ бу́дто не хóчетъ = *he makes out he doesn't want to*
онá бу́дто-бы нездорóва = *she is supposed to be unwell.*

Other particles used colloquially are

авось = *may be*
небось = *I expect*
молъ
дéскать
} = *says he, said he* (in quoting another's words)

which are all very commonly used by the people, but not much in society or literature.

The particle -съ is often affixed to the last word of any sentence, especially by servants and shopkeepers and subordinate officials when addressing employers, customers, or superiors, to indicate subservience; it is supposed to be an abbreviation of the words сýдарь = *sir* and судáрыня = *madam.*

THE PREPOSITIONS AND THE USE OF THE CASES WITH AND WITHOUT PREPOSITIONS

§ 79. **Alphabetical list of prepositions:**

безъ (безо)	= *without*	Gen.
близъ (близь)	= *near*	Gen.
вдоль	= *down*	Gen.
вмéсто	= *instead of*	Gen.
внутри́	= *inside*	Gen.

внѣ	= *outside*	Gen.
во́злѣ	= *alongside*	Gen.
вокру́гъ	= *around*	Gen.
вопреки́	= *against*	Dat.
въ (во)	= *in, into*	Acc. Loc.
для	= *for*	Gen.
до	= *up to*	Gen.
за	= *for, behind*	Acc. Inst.
изъ	= *out of*	Gen.
изъ-за	= *from out, from behind, because of*	Gen.
изъ-подъ	= *from under*	Gen.
кро́мѣ	= *besides, except*	Gen.
круго́мъ	= *around*	Gen.
къ (ко)	= *to*	Dat.
ме́жду	= *between*	Gen. Inst.
ми́мо	= *past*	Gen.
на	= *on, on to*	Acc. Loc.
надъ (надо)	= *above*	Inst.
о (объ, обо)	= *about, against*	Acc. Loc.
о́коло	= *around, about, near*	Gen.
отъ (ото)	= *away from*	Gen.
пе́редъ (передо, предъ, предо)	= *in front of*	Acc. Inst.
по	= *according to, along, till*	Acc. Dat. Loc.
по́длѣ	= *alongside of*	Gen.
позади́ (позаде́)	= *behind*	Gen.
посреди́	= *in the midst of*	Gen.
по́слѣ	= *after*	Gen.
подъ (подо)	= *under*	Acc. Inst.
при	= *in the presence of, at, near*	Loc.
про	= *about*	Acc.
про́тивъ	= *against*	Gen.
ра́ди	= *for the sake of*	Gen.
сверхъ	= *over*	Gen.
сквозь	= *through*	Acc.
среди́	= *in the midst of*	Gen.
съ (со)	= *with, from*	Acc. Gen. Inst.
у	= *at the house of, near, in the possession of*	Gen.
че́резъ, чрезъ	= *through, across, over*	Acc.

§ 80. The Nominative.

The nominative is used, as in other languages, for the subject and the predicate of the sentence, e. g.

я твой отéцъ = *I [am] thy father*

though under certain conditions the predicate is in the instrumental, cf. § 84.

The nominative is used for the vocative, except in the three instances mentioned in § 39, e. g.

отéцъ мой! = *oh, my father!*

за + nom.

The nominative is always used after the preposition за = *for* in phrases such as:

что́ это за кни́га? = *what book is that? what sort of a book is that?* (lit. = *what this for book*). Cf. German: *was ist das für ein Buch?*

though when the nom. is the same as the acc. it is not apparent that it is the nom., e. g.

что́ это за до́мъ? = *what house is that?*

§ 81. The Genitive.

The genitive is used to denote:

(1) Possession, e. g.

домъ отца́ = *the house of the father*

though in this sense it is often replaced by the possessive adj., q. v.

(2) Qualities, e. g.

ма́льчикъ хоро́шаго хара́ктера = *a boy of good character*
челове́къ пожи́лыхъ лѣтъ = *a man of advanced years.*

(3) Partition, e. g.

я хочу́ воды́ = *I want (some) water*
хлѣба, пожа́луйста! = *(some) bread, please!*
кусо́къ мя́са = *a piece of meat*

often with the meaning of *a lot* after impersonal verbs:

накопи́лось пи́семъ = *(a lot) of letters has accumulated.*

(4) Quantity, e. g.

стака́нъ ча́ю = *a glass of tea* (tea in Russia is usually drunk out of glasses)

фунтъ са́хару = *a pound of sugar*
ма́сса люде́й = *a mass (crowd) of people*

after adverbs of quantity, e. g.

мно́го де́тей = *many children*
ма́ло друзе́й = *few friends*
немно́го (dim. немно́жко) мя́са = *a little meat*
не́сколько лѣ́тъ = *some years*

for the gen. in -у cf. § 39; for the other adverbs of quantity, and also for their adjectival forms and use, cf. § 74.

(5) After the numerals 5–20, 25–30, 35-40, &c., cf. § 63.

(6) Time in certain expressions:

сего́дня = *to-day* (lit. = *of this day*)
пе́рваго ма́рта = *on the first of March* (= *of the first*).

(7) Comparison:

онъ слабе́е меня́ = *he* [*is*] *weaker than I.*

(8) The genitive is always used after certain verbs:

бояться, опасаться } = *to fear*
избѣ́гать = *to avoid*
жела́ть = *to wish* (when an indefinite quantity is implied)
хоте́ть = *to desire* (,, ,, ,,)
иска́ть = *to seek*
проси́ть = *to beg*
ждать, дожида́ться } = *to await, expect*
сто́ить = *to cost* (except in quotations of prices)
лиша́ть = *to deprive*
каса́ться = *to touch, concern*
держа́ться = *to keep to.*

Examples:

я бою́сь мо́ря = *I am afraid of the sea*
хоти́те-ли вы вина́ = *would you like some wine?* but я хочу́ э́ту кни́гу (= *acc.*) = *I want this book*
жела́ю вамъ счастли́ваго пути́! = *I wish you a good journey!*
(жела́ю вамъ) всего́ хоро́шаго (лу́чшаго)! (*I wish you*) *everything good* (*best*)! (A very common phrase on saying good-bye or ending a letter.)

я ищу́ кварти́ры = *I am looking for a flat*
жду ва́шего прі́зда = *I am awaiting your arrival*
сто́ило его́ жи́зни = *it cost his life* (but in prices the nom. is used)
э́то каса́ется васъ = *this concerns you*
что каса́ется меня́ = *as far as I am concerned*

notice the idiom :

ми́лости про́симъ! = *please come and see us* (lit. = *we crave mercy*, a very common form of general invitation).

(9) After certain adjectives in the shorter or attributive form :

по́лонъ = *full*
ваго́нъ по́лонъ люде́й = *the railway-carriage is full of people*
досто́инъ = *worthy*
она́ досто́йна его́ = *she is worthy of him.*

(10) In negative sentences the direct object is always in the genitive, e. g.

я не ви́жу ва́шего до́ма = *I do not* (= *cannot*) *see your house*
онъ не слы́шитъ моего́ го́лоса = *he does not hear my voice*
я не зна́ю ва́шей сестры́ = *I don't know your sister.*

One meets with apparent exceptions to this rule, when the object is not directly governed by the negative, but they are only apparent, e. g.

я не могу́ чита́ть э́ту кни́гу = *I cannot read this book*

but

я не чита́лъ э́той кни́ги = *I have not read this book.*

The genitive is also used after

нѣтъ = *there is not* (*il n'y a pas*)
не бу́детъ = *there will not be*
не́-было = *there was not*
у меня́ нѣтъ де́негъ = *I have no money* (lit. = *to me there is no money*)
сего́дня не бу́детъ представле́нія = *to-day there will be no performance*
не бу́детъ дождя́ = *there will be no rain*
не́-было ничего́ = *there was nothing*
не́-было моро́за = *there was no frost.*

(11) The genitive is used instead of the accusative in the singular and plural of masculine nouns ending in -ъ, -ь, -й, and

in the plural of feminine nouns ending in -а, -я when they denote things that are or were animate, e. g.

я ви́жу солда́та = *I see a soldier*
онъ зна́етъ царя́ = *he knows the tsar*
я люблю́ соба́къ = *I am fond of dogs*

The old accusative which was the same as the nominative is used in a few phrases which became crystallized before the introduction of this use of the genitive. Cf. § 83.

(12) Notice the idioms:

до́ма = *at home*
ма́ло того́ что . . . = *far from* . . .

The genitive is used after the following prepositions:

безъ = *without*
безъ меня́ = *without me, in my absence*
безо всего́ = *without anything*

notice безъ того́, что́бы не сказа́ть вамъ = *without telling you*

до = *up to, till, before*
до того́ = *to that* (sc. *extent*, = *to such an extent*)
до того́ вре́мени = *up to that time*
до сихъ по́ръ = *till now* (cf. § 68)
до конца́ = *up to the end* (коне́цъ = *end*)
до рожде́ства Христо́ва = *before the birth of Christ*
до ва́съ = *before your time, before your arrival*

notice the idioms:

мнѣ не́ до э́того = *I have no time* (or *no inclination*) *for this* (sc. *now*)
имъ не́ до насъ = *they have nothing to do with us* (sc. *they don't bother themselves about us*)
до́-сыта = *to one's full*

изъ (изо before certain groups of consonants) = *from out of, of*
я получи́лъ письмо́ изъ Москвы́ = *I have received a letter from Moscow*
онъ пріѣ́халъ изъ А́нгліи = *he has arrived from England*
изъ воды́ = *from out of the water*
изъ зо́лота = *of gold*
изъ стекла́ = *of glass*
изо дня́ въ де́нь = *from day to day*

it is always used in the phrase *one of*, e.g.

въ одно́мъ изъ большíхъ домо́въ = *in one of the big houses . . .*

the gen. alone cannot be used in such cases; notice the idiom:

и́зъ-дому = *from (out of) home.*

The two following compound prepositions also take the genitive:

изъ-за = *from behind, from beyond, from out of, on account of*
изъ-за́ грани́цы = *from beyond the frontier*, sc. *from abroad*
изъ-за э́того = *from out of this*, sc. *on account of, as a result of this*
изъ-за мое́й болѣ́зни = *on account of, as a result of my illness*
изъ-подъ = *from under*
изъ-подъ стола́ = *from under the table.*

у = *near, at the house of, in the possession of, from.*

As the verb *to have* (имѣ́ть) is very seldom used in Russian, recourse has to be had to a paraphrase to express possession, temporary or permanent. This paraphrase consists of the preposition у followed by a noun or pronoun in the genitive and a part of the verb *to be* (быть); the part most commonly used is есть = *is, il y a*, though of course бу́детъ = *will be, il y aura*, and бы́ло = *was, il y avait, il y a eu* are also very frequent. It remains to be said that the word есть is as often as not omitted, so that as a result the commonest way of saying in Russian:

I have	is	у меня́
thou hast	,,	у тебя́
he or *she has*	,,	у него́, у ней
we have	,,	у насъ
you have	,,	у васъ
they have	,,	у нихъ

The full forms, with есть added each time after the pronoun, are especially common in relating stories or whenever it is necessary to be particularly explicit, and in questions.

Examples:

у меня́ есть оте́цъ и мать, и два бра́та = *I have a father and a mother and two brothers*
у нихъ мно́го де́негъ = *they have a lot of money*

у насъ нѣтъ дѣте́й = *we have no children* (нѣтъ is a contraction of не + есть)

есть у васъ э́та кни́га? = *have you this book?*

у меня́ на́сморкъ = *I have a cold in the head*

у него́ просту́да = *he has a cold in the chest*

notice the idioms:

у васъ хоро́шій видъ = *you look well* (lit. *you have a good aspect*)

у него плохо́й видъ = *he looks ill.*

If the word in the nominative comes before the preposition у and the word governed by it, it regains its original meaning of *near*, e. g.

соба́ка у меня́ = *the dog is near me.*

The distinction is very subtle and must be closely observed, as it is one way of expressing the difference between the definite and the indefinite articles, e. g.

у меня́ or
у меня́ есть } соба́ка = *I have a dog*

while

соба́ка у меня́ = *the dog is near me* (not necessarily *my* dog), i. e. *I have the dog, the dog is in my possession*, or *at my house.*

Again,

у царя́ автомоби́ль = *the tsar has a motor-car*

but

автомоби́ль у царя́ = *the motor-car is at present in the tsar's possession, the tsar has the motor-car* (probably not *his own*).

у of course often means *at the house of*, e. g.

они́ у насъ = *they* [*are*] *at our house*

у насъ сего́дня балъ = [*there is*] *a dance at our house to-day*

я обѣ́даю сего́дня у друзе́й = *I am dining at the house of some friends to-day.*

With the personal pronoun it also acquires the meaning of a possessive adjective, e. g.

у меня́ зубъ боли́тъ = *my tooth aches, I have toothache*

домъ у насъ гори́тъ = *our house is burning*

голова́ у неё боли́тъ = *her head aches, she has a headache.*

In exclamatory remarks it acquires, coupled with the personal pronoun, something of the nature of the ethic dative, e. g.

она́ у меня́ хоро́шая ло́шадь! = *that's a fine horse!* (sc. *of mine*)

ты у меня́ краса́вица! = *thou art a beauty!* (not ironically, sc. *you are mine, you are beautiful, and I'm proud of you*)

она́ у васъ у́мница! = *she's a clever-boots!* (sc. *your little girl*).

Curiously enough after certain verbs у can also mean *from*, e. g.

онъ о́тнялъ у меня́ де́ньги = *he took away the money from me*

я взялъ у него́ кни́гу = *I took the* (or *a*) *book from him.*

съ (со before certain groups of consonants) = *from, since, from off*

съ голово́й до ногъ	= *from head to foot* (lit. *feet*)
съ утра́ до ве́чера	= *from morning till evening*
съ января́	= *since January*
съ пя́таго ма́я	= *from the 5th of May*
онъ упа́лъ съ кры́ши	= *he fell from the roof*
ско́лько съ васъ сня́ли?	= *how much did they take off you?* (e. g. *in shops*, = the colloquial: *how much did they rook you?*)
съ меня́ сня́ли очень до́рого	= *they made me pay dear* (lit. *they took very dearly from me*)
со дня́ на́ день	= *from day to day*
со ску́ки	= *from tedium*
съ отча́янія	= *from despair*
съ ва́шего позволе́нія	= *with your permission.*

Notice phrases such as:

сра́зу (also съ-ра́зу)	= *at once*
я сра́зу узна́лъ его́	= *I immediately recognized him*
сно́ва	= *again*
сы́знова	= *all over again*
снача́ла	= *at first*

which are compound adverbs formed by the preposition съ with the genitive of nouns and adjectives.

отъ (ото before certain groups of consonants) = *from, away from*

онъ у́ѣхалъ отъ насъ = *he has gone away from us* (sc. *left us*)
я получи́лъ письмо́ отъ бра́та = *I have received a letter from* (sc. *my*) *brother*
отъ ра́дости = *from joy*
отъ ску́ки = *from tedium*
ото всего́ э́того = *from* (*as a result of*) *all this*
онъ у́меръ отъ э́того = *he died from* (*of*) *this*
. . . . отъ двадца́таго ма́я = ... *of the 20th of May*

notice the idiom:

о́тъ роду = *from birth.*

Phrases are common in which both отъ and до are used:

отъ Петрогра́да до Москвы́ = *from Petrograd to Moscow*
отъ нача́ла до конца́ = *from beginning to end*
отъ вре́мени до вре́мени = *from time to time.*

There are a number of prepositions which take the genitive which were originally adverbs (some are still used as such), or cases of nouns with or without other prepositions, and having become crystallized are regularly used as prepositions:

близъ = *near*
близъ Москвы́ = *near Moscow*
о́коло = *around, about, near*
о́коло Ло́ндона = (1) *not far from London,* (2) *around London*
о́коло двадцати́ лѣтъ = *about 20 years*
*круго́мъ, *вокру́гъ = *round, around*
круго́мъ го́рода = *round the town*
по́длѣ, *во́злѣ = *alongside of*
во́злѣ меня́ = *alongside of me*
по́длѣ рѣки́ = *alongside the river*
вдоль = *the length of, down*
вдоль у́лицы = *down the street*
внѣ = *outside*
внѣ ко́мнаты = *outside the room*
*внутри́ = *inside*
внутри́ ко́мнаты = *inside the room*

вмѣ́сто = *instead of*
вмѣ́сто того́ = *instead of that*

сверхъ = *over*
сверхъ того́ = *in addition to that*
сверхъ шу́бы = *over (his) fur coat*
(сверхесте́ственный = *supernatural*)

среди́ (*посреди́) = *in the middle of*
среди́ у́лицы = *in the middle of the street*
(Средизе́мное мо́ре = *the Mediterranean*)

*позади́ = *behind*
позади́ меня́ = *behind me*

*по́слѣ = *after*
по́слѣ обѣ́да = *after dinner*

*ми́мо = *past*
ми́мо до́ма = *past the house* (cf. мимохо́домъ = *in passing*)

для = *for*
для́ чего́? = *what for?*
онъ сдѣ́лалъ э́то для меня́ = *he did this for me*

кро́мѣ = *besides*
кро́мѣ э́того = *besides this*
кро́мѣ того́ = *besides that*

ра́ди = *for the sake of*
ра́ди Бога! = *for God's sake*

про́тивъ = *against, opposite*
про́тивъ непрія́теля = *against the enemy*
про́тивъ холе́ры = *against cholera*
про́тивъ насъ = (1) *against us*, (2) *opposite us*

ме́жду = *between* (but more commonly with the inst.).

Those marked with an asterisk can be used as adverbs as well.

§ 82. The Dative is used after a number of verbs without any preposition:

дать
дава́ть } = *to give*

я далъ ей де́ньги = *I gave her the money*
онъ далъ мнѣ сло́во = *he gave me* [*his*] *word*

вѣ́рить = *to believe*
я вамъ вѣ́рю = *I believe you* (but N.B. вѣ́ровать въ Бо́га = *to believe in God*)

удивля́ться = *to be astonished* (*at*)

я удивля́юсь э́тому = *I am astonished at this*

ра́доваться = *to rejoice* (*at*)

мы ра́дуемся ва́шему прі́ѣзду = *we rejoice at your arrival*

кла́няться = *to greet* (lit. = *to bow to*)

кла́няюсь всѣмъ = *greetings to all*

учи́ться = *to learn*

я учу́сь ру́сскому языку́ = *I am learning Russian*

смѣ́яться = *to laugh* (*at*)

чему́ вы смѣётесь ? = *what are you laughing at ?*

(N.B. *to laugh at some one* = с. надъ + inst.)

мѣша́ть = *to hinder*

я вамъ не мѣша́ю ? = *I am not in your way ?*

моли́ться = *to pray to*

молю́сь Бо́гу = *I am praying to God*

зави́довать = *to envy*

зави́дую вамъ = *I envy you*

жа́ловаться = *to complain*

онъ жа́луется мнѣ на васъ = *he complains to me of you*

грози́ть = *to threaten*

грози́тъ намъ бѣда́ = *misfortune is threatening us*

мстить = *to take vengeance on*

учи́ть (+ acc. and dat.) = *to teach*

чему́ онъ васъ у́читъ ? = *what is he teaching you ?*

говори́ть, сказа́ть = *to tell*

скажи́те мнѣ = *tell me*

подража́ть = *to imitate*

напомина́ть, напо́мнить = *to remind*

напо́мните мнѣ объ э́томъ = *remind me about this*

э́то мнѣ напомина́етъ его́ = *this reminds me of him*

пи́сать = *to write* (but also with къ, cf. p. 131)

я пишу́ ему́ письмо́ = *I am writing him a letter*

подари́ть = *to give, to present*; купи́ть = *to buy*, and others.

Also after impersonal verbs:

э́то мнѣ нра́вится = *this pleases me*, sc. *I like this*

мнѣ хо́чется = *I want to*

мнѣ пить хо́чется = *I am thirsty* (= *I want to drink*. There is no adjective *thirsty* in Russian)

ка́жется = *it seems*

мнѣ ка́жется = *it seems to me*, sc. *I think*

мнѣ не спи́тся = *I cannot sleep*

мнѣ нездоро́вится = *I am unwell.*

Notice the curious expression:

онъ прихо́дится мнѣ (e.g.) дя́дей (inst.) = *he is my* (e.g.) *uncle*

which is used to describe relationships usually of the remoter kind (N.B. прихо́дится usually = *one has to* + inf.).

The dative is also used in the following common expressions:

мо́жно мнѣ?	= *may I?*
вамъ невозмо́жно	= *you may not*
вамъ нельзя́	= *you must not*
пора́ намъ!	= *it is time for us* (sc. *to go*)
я радъ ва́шему пріѣзду	= *I am glad at your arrival.*

After adverbs expressing pleasure, displeasure, heat, cold, &c., e.g.

уго́дно-ли вамъ?	= *would you like . . . .?*
какъ вамъ уго́дно	= *just as you like*
мнѣ хо́лодно	= *I am cold*
мнѣ тепло́	= *I am warm*
мнѣ жа́рко	= *I am hot*
мнѣ непрія́тно + inf.	= *it is unpleasant to me to . . . .*
мнѣ жаль	= *I am sorry.*

Also in expressing *age*:

ско́лько вамъ лѣтъ? = *how old are you?* (lit. = *how many to you of years?*)

мнѣ два́дцать лѣтъ = *I am twenty*

and in a few expressions such as:

э́та кни́га вамъ	= *this book is for you*
э́то мнѣ	= *this is for me*
цѣна́ э́тимъ мѣста́мъ	= *the price of these places*
онъ намъ сосѣ́дъ	= *he is our neighbour*
онъ мнѣ врагъ	= *he is an enemy of mine*
э́то не пришло́ мнѣ въ го́лову	= *it did not enter my head.*

The dative is also used with the infinitive to express *is to, has got to*, e.g.

кому́ написа́ть э́то письмо́?	= *who is to write this letter?*
э́тому не быть	= *this is not to be.*

Notice the idioms:

так ъ себ ѣ́ = *fairly*

e.g.

как ъ э́то вам ъ нра́вится? так ъ себ ѣ́! = *how do you like that? so-so!*

и тому́ подо́бное = *and so on* (abbr. и т. п. = &c.) (lit. *and to that similar*: sometimes also in plur.)

домо́й = *homewards*, [*to*] *home.*

The dative is used after the following prepositions:

къ (ко before certain groups of consonants) = *to*

я пришёл ъ къ вам ъ	= *I have come to you*
приход́ите къ нам ъ	= *come to us*, sc. *come and see us*
приход́ите ко мн ѣ́	= *come and see me*
у мен я́ къ вам ъ про́сьба	= *I have a favour to ask you*
къ ве́черу	= *towards evening*
къ о́сени	= *towards autumn, by the autumn*
къ нача́лу октябр я́	= *by the beginning of October*
къ конц у́ ноябр я́	= *by the end of November*
къ пе́рвому а́вгуста	= *by the first of August*
къ пят и́ часа́м ъ	= *by five o'clock.*

Notice the idioms:

къ сожал ѣ́нію	= *unfortunately, to my regret*
къ несча́стію	= *unfortunately*
къ моему́ удивл ѣ́нію	= *to my surprise*
э́то вам ъ къ лицу́	= *that suits you* (of clothes), (lit. = *to you to the face*)
къ мои́м ъ нога́м ъ	= (*he fell*) *at my feet*
лицо́м ъ къ лицу́	= *face to face*
къ како́й ста́ти?	= *to what purpose?*
ста́ти	= *by the by, that reminds me.*

вопреки́ = *against, in spite of*

вопреки́ прили́чіям ъ = *in defiance of decorum*

по = *along, over, according to*

по у́лиц ѣ	= *along the street*
по́-морю	= *over the sea, by sea*
по-мо́ему or по моему́ мн ѣ́нію	= *in my opinion*

почему́ ? = *why ?* (= *on what grounds ?*)
потому́ что (abb. п.т.ч.) = *because*
по пре́жнему = *as formerly*
по но́вому сти́лю / по ста́рому сти́лю = *according to old, new style*

(in dating letters, the Russian (Julian) calendar being thirteen days behind ours (Gregorian); the abbreviations are: с.с., н.с.).

Notice the very common idioms:

по-тихо́ньку = *quietly, on the sly*
по-немно́жку / ма́ло-по-ма́лу = *gradually, little by little*
по желѣ́зной доро́гѣ = *by rail*
по слу́чаю + gen. = *on the occasion of . . .*
по нево́лѣ = *perforce*
по мое́й ча́сти = *in my line, in my department* (lit. *part*)
я уда́рилъ его́ по головѣ́ = *I hit him on the head*
я уда́рилъ его́ по плеча́мъ = *I hit him on the shoulders*
по возвы́шеннымъ цѣ́намъ = *at raised prices* (sc. *higher than usual*),

also distributively:

по ночам̀ъ = *at night* (sc. *frequently*)
по утра́мъ = *in the morning* (sc. *every morning*)
по Воскресе́ніямъ = *on Sundays, every Sunday*
онъ далъ всѣ́мъ намъ по я́блоку = *he gave us all an apple each*
по пяти́ рубле́й (dat. + gen. pl.) = *at five roubles.*

§ 83. The Accusative is used

(1) To denote the object of a transitive verb, e. g.

я люблю́ свою́ ро́дину = *I love my country.*

It has already been remarked that the acc. sing. and plur. of masculine nouns ending in -ъ, -ь, and -й, and the acc. plur. of feminine nouns ending in -а, -я is the same in form as the gen. sing. and plur. in the case of animate, and the same as the nominative in the case of inanimate nouns.

The same rule applies to all adjectives and to all the pronouns except the personal pronouns and кто = *who*; in these the acc. is always the same as the gen., even the acc. of the neuter pronoun

оно́ = *it* being the same, not as the nom. but as the gen., viz. его́.

It must be observed, however, that this was not always so; the old acc. was invariably the same as the nom., and this is still to be seen in a few expressions which became crystallized before the gen. came to be used for the acc. in the case of animate things; such phrases, amongst others, are:

вы́йти за́мужъ = *to marry*

(N.B. of the woman only; the phrase literally means *to go out behind a man* or *a husband*)

его́ произвели́ въ полко́вники = *they have promoted him to be a colonel* (lit. *into the colonels*)

звать въ го́сти = *to invite* (lit. = *to call into guests*, sc. *as guests*)

поступи́ть въ солда́ты = *to enlist.*

(2) To express duration of time and distance:

э́ту зи́му = *this winter*
цѣ́лое лѣ́то = *the whole summer*
про́шлую о́сень = *last autumn*
бу́дущую весну́ = *next spring*
одинъ годъ = (*for*) *one year*
кру́глый годъ = *the whole year round*
цѣ́лую недѣ́лю = (*for*) *a whole week*
мы прошли́ двѣ версты́ (acc. + gen. sing., cf. § 61) = *we have walked two versts.*

(3) After the word жаль = *pity*, e.g.

мнѣ́ жаль ва́шу сестру́ = *I am sorry for your sister*
ему́ жаль её = *he is sorry for her*
мнѣ́ его́ жаль = *I am sorry for him.*

The accusative is used after the following prepositions:

въ (во before certain groups of consonants) = *into*
я ѣ́ду въ Россію = *I am travelling to Russia*
я ѣ́ду въ Ло́ндонъ = *I am travelling to London*
въ Кры́мъ = *to the Crimea*
онъ вошёлъ въ ко́мнату = *he came into the room.*

Notice the following idiomatic uses:

въ понедѣ́льникъ	= *on Monday*
во вто́рникъ	= *on Tuesday*
въ день моего́ рожде́нія	= *on my birthday*
въ два часа́	= *at two o'clock*
разъ въ день	= *once a day*
два ра́за въ недѣ́лю	= *twice a week*
во что́-бы то ни ста́ло	= *cost what it may*
въ два рубля́	= *costing two roubles*
въ рубль	= *at one rouble*
въ два этажа́	= *two stories (high)*
въ ты́сячу разъ лу́чше	= *a thousand times better*
въ старину́	= *in the old days*
во́-время	= *in time*
во вре́мя + gen.	= *during (the time of)*
въ по́ру	= *it is the right size*
мнѣ́ не въ по́ру	= *it doesn't fit me*
вамъ въ по́ру	= *it fits you*
въ го́ру	= *up-hill.*
(Cf. вверхъ	= *upwards*
внизъ	= *downwards.*)

Notice the common expressions:

втече́ніе + gen. (also written въ тече́ніе)	= *in the course of*
вслѣ́дствіе э́того (also въ с . . .)	= *as a result of this*
въ продолже́ніе цѣ́лаго го́да	= *for a whole year.*

за = *behind, beyond, for, by*

я ѣ́ду за грани́цу	= *I am going abroad* (lit. *beyond the frontier*)
онъ пое́халъ за́-городъ	= *he has gone out of town*
онъ взялъ меня́ за́ руку	= *he took me by the hand*
ся́демъ за столъ	= *let us sit down to table*
ей за́-пятьдесятъ лѣ́тъ	= *she is more than 50.*

Always after the following verbs:

(по) благодари́ть	= *to thank*
купи́ть покупа́ть	= *to buy*

продава́ть / прода́ть = *to sell*

моли́ться = *to pray*

and expressions such as *praying for, fighting for*, e.g.

я благодарю́ васъ за ва́ше письмо́ = *I thank you for your letter*

я купи́лъ э́то за ру́бль = *I bought this for a rouble*

онъ мнѣ про́далъ ло́шадь за пять сотъ рубле́й = *he sold me a horse for 500 roubles*

моли́тесь за меня́ = *pray for me*

жизнь за царя́ = (*one's*) *life for the tsar*

за Англича́нъ = *for* (sc. *in favour of*) *the English.*

Notice the idioms:

за кого́ вы меня́ принима́ете? = *whom do you take me for?*

вы́йти / выходи́ть за . . . = *to marry*

она́ вы́шла за нѣмца = *she married a German*

за кого́ она вы́шла? = *whom did she marry?*

For the phrase вы́йти за́мужъ cf. p. 133.

Also in certain expressions of time and distance:

она умерла́ за́ два часа́ до ва́шего пріѣзда = *she died two hours before your arrival*

мы живёмъ за́ пять вёрстъ отъ ста́нціи = *we live five versts from the station*

за ца́рствованіе Алекса́ндра второ́го = *in the reign of Alexander II*

за́ лѣто = *in the course of the summer* (sc. *when it is over*).

Notice the idioms:

за хвостъ, за́ голову = *by the tail, by the head*

за́-руку, за́-ногу = *by the hand, by the leg* or *foot*

заодно́ = *in concert with*

за то́ = *on the other hand.*

на = *on to*

положи́те кни́гу на сто́лъ = *put the book on the table*

онъ лёгъ на́-бокъ = *he lay down on his side*

на колѣни = *on to* (*one's*) *knees*

на зе́млю = *on to the ground.*

Notice the following idiomatic uses:

на́-ночь = *for the night*
онъ пріѣхалъ на цѣлый мѣсяцъ = *he has come for a whole month*
дня на́-два = *for about two days*
на другóй день = *(on) the next day*
на слѣдующій разъ (or на другóй р.) = *for next time*
на́-гору = *up-hill*
на́-берегъ мóря = *to the seaside*
ѣхать на Кавка́зъ = *to travel to the Caucasus*
на́-два рубля́ доро́же = *dearer by two roubles*
на пятьдеся́ть копѣекъ дешéвле = *cheaper by 50 kopeks*
на лицó = *present* (sc. *to be present*), *in cash*
на си́лу = *with great effort*
на́-ново = *afresh*
на́-скоро = *quickly* (sc. *without taking much time or trouble*)
положи́ться / надѣяться на кого́ = *to have confidence in any one*
ку́шайте на здоро́віе! = *eat it to your health* (a common phrase when showing hospitality)
на сѣверъ = *to the North*
на югъ = *to the South*
на востóкъ = *to the East*
на за́падъ = *to the West*
э́то похóже на васъ = *that is like you* (of a portrait)
э́то ни на что́ не похóже = *that is not like anything* (sc. *unutterably bad, abominable*)
на пáмять = *from memory*
на-пока́зъ = *for show*
на-вéрхъ = *upstairs* (sc. *motion up*)
налѣво = *to the left*
напрáво = *to the right*
наконéцъ = *at last*
наизýсть = *by heart* (e.g. recitations, &c.)

о (before vowels объ) = *about, against*

объ э́ту пору = *about this time*
я ушúбся о столъ = *I have hurt myself against the table*
я опёрся о колóнну = *I leant against a column*
рука́ óбъ руку = *arm in arm*

по = *till*

отъ пе́рваго (sc. числа́) по три́дцать-пе́рвое (sc. число́) января́ = *from Jan. 1st-31st*

по колѣ́ни въ водѣ́ = *up to the knees in the water.*

Notice the idioms:

по ту́ сто́рону = (*over on*) *that side* (*of the river*)
по пра́вую ру́ку = *on the right-hand side*
по лѣ́вую ру́ку = *on the left-hand side.*

For the use of по + acc. in expression of money values, cf. § 69.

подъ = *under*

положи́те э́ту поду́шку себѣ́ по́дъ-голову = *put this pillow under your head*

по́дъ-руку (взять кого́) = *to take some one by the arm*
по́дъ-гору = *down-hill.*

про = *concerning*

про кого́ вы говори́те? = *about whom are you talking?*

Notice the idiom:

про себя́ = *to oneself*
e. g. они́ смѣ́ялись про себя́ = *they were laughing to themselves*
(про себя́) = (*aside*).

сквозь = *through*

ви́дно сквозь дымъ = *visible through the smoke*

сквозь лѣсъ = *through the forest, of anything that is visible through the trees of the forest*

while че́резъ лѣсъ = *through the forest*, e. g. *walking through the forest.*

съ (со before certain groups of consonants) = *about, like*

онъ съ меня́ (sc. ро́стомъ) = *he is* (*as big*) *as me* (sc. *in growth*)

съ недѣ́лю = *about a week.*

че́резъ (or чрезъ) = *through, across, via, over*

че́резъ забо́ръ = *over the fence*
че́резъ во́ду = *through the water*
че́резъ во́здухъ = *through the air*
че́резъ лѣсъ = *through the forest*

чéрезъ рѣ́ку = *across the river*, or *through the river* (sc. *motion across*)
чéрезъ Неву́ = *across the Neva*
чéрезъ Москву́ = *across, through*, or *via Moscow*
чéрезъ кого́? = *through whom?* (sc. *by whose agency?*).

In expressions of time:

чéрезъ полъ-часа́ = *in half an hour's time*
чéрезъ недѣ́лю = *in a week.*

It also can mean *every other*:

чéрезъ часъ = *in an hour's time*, or *every other hour*
чéрезъ день = *every other day.*

The Instrumental.

§ 84. The instrumental case denotes primarily, as its name implies, the instrument or agent by which anything is done, e.g.

писа́ть карандашо́мъ = *to write with a pencil*
э́то письмо́ напи́сано мной = *this letter* [*was*] *written by me*
рука́ми = *with* [*one's*] *hands*
ного́й = *with* [*one's*] *foot*, or *leg.*

It denotes manner:

парохо́домъ = *by steamer*
я ѣ́ду въ Россію парохо́домъ = *I am travelling to Russia by steamer*
сухи́мъ путёмъ = *overland* (lit. *by dry way*)
я пое́ду сухи́мъ путёмъ = *I shall go overland*
мо́ремъ = *by sea*
толпо́й = *in a crowd*
стрѣло́й = *like an arrow*
лѣ́сомъ = *by* (sc. *through*) *the forest*
доро́жкой = *by the path*
по́лемъ = *by the field*
нало́женнымъ платежёмъ = *pay on delivery.*

Notice the idioms:

ѣ́хать ша́гомъ = *to drive* (or *ride*) *at walking-pace*, '*au pas*'
идти́ пѣшко́мъ = *to go on foot.*

and especially:

ѣ́хать верхо́мъ = *to ride* (sc. *on horseback*); верхъ = *top*, and the phrase literally means *to travel as the top* (sc. *the upper part*).

The phrase ката́ться верхомъ, lit. = *to roll along as the top* is also used; these two phrases are the only means of saying *to ride* in Russian. Notice also:

ря́домъ	= *side by side*
гусько́мъ	= *in single file*
таки́мъ путёмъ	= *in this way*
каки́мъ о́бразомъ?	= *in what manner, how?*
каки́мъ способомъ?	= *by what means?*

таки́мъ о́бразомъ = *in this* (lit. *such*) *manner, like that*, and often means *if you do this . . . .*

посре́дствомъ + gen.	= *by means of*

каки́мъ or кото́рымъ по́ѣздомъ? = *by which* or *what train?*

мѣста́ми	= *in places*
бо́льшею ча́стью	= *for the most part*
ра́зомъ	= *all at once, all together*
о́птомъ, гурто́мъ	= (*sell by*) *wholesale*
цѣлико́мъ	= *wholly, completely, all*
лицо́мъ къ лицу́	= *face to face*
одни́мъ сло́вомъ	= *in one word*
други́ми слова́ми	= *in other words*
его́ слова́ми	= *in his words*
само́-собо́й	= *of its own accord, automatically*
само́ собо́ю разумѣ́ется	= *cela se comprend*

она́ хороша́ собо́й = *she is good-looking* (here the собо́й merely amplifies the sentence; if anything it emphasizes the compliment, but is really untranslatable in English)

во́лей-нево́лей	= *willy-nilly.*

In certain expressions of the time of day and the seasons:

весно́й	= *in the spring*
лѣ́томъ	= *in the summer*
о́сенью	= *in the autumn*
зимо́й	= *in the winter*

(when preceded by the demonstrative pronoun always use the acc., cf. § 83)

у́тромъ	= *in the morning*
ве́черомъ	= *in the evening*

днёмъ = *by day*, and also very frequently = *in the afternoon*
но́чью = *by night*.

N.B. (1) *this morning* is сего́дня у́тромъ (lit. = *to-day in the morning*).

(2) *this evening* is сего́дня ве́черомъ (lit. = *to-day in the evening*), similarly за́втра у́тромъ = *to-morrow morning*, &c.

It is used in expressions such as:

чѣмъ бога́ты, тѣмъ и ра́ды = *what we are rich in, to that you are welcome* (lit. = *with that we are glad*, sc. *that we will gladly give*).

It denotes origin:

ро́домъ Англича́нинъ = *by birth an Englishman*.

It is used in some expressions of measurement:

рѣка́ широно́й въ полъ-версты́ = *a river about half a verst wide* (*in width*)

гора́ въ ты́сячу фу́товъ вышино́й = *a hill 1000 feet in height*
also глубино́й = *in depth*.

In comparison of measures, e.g.

я го́домъ ста́рше его́ = *I am older than he by a year*

though these phrases are more commonly expressed by на + acc. (cf. § 83) or въ + разъ (cf. §§ 65, 83)

тѣмъ лу́чше = *all the better*
тѣмъ не ме́нѣе = *nevertheless*
тѣмъ бо́лѣе = *all the more*.

The instrumental is always used after certain verbs:

любова́ться = *to admire* (but only literally *to gaze at*)
по́льзоваться
воспо́льзоваться } = *to take advantage of, to profit by*
по́льзуюсь э́тимъ слу́чаемъ + inf. = *I am taking advantage of this occasion to . . .*
горди́ться = *to be proud of*
я горжу́сь ва́ми = *I am proud of you*
дорожи́ть = *to value highly*

жéртвовать
пожéртвовать } = *to sacrifice*

онъ пожéртвовалъ всѣмъ своимъ состоя́ніемъ = *he sacrificed the whole of his fortune*

владѣ́ть = *to rule, command*

А́нглія владѣетъ И́ндіей = *England rules India*

онъ хорошо́ владѣетъ ру́сскимъ языко́мъ = *he has a good command of the Russian language*

кома́ндовать = *to be in command over* (*troops*, &c.)

руководи́ть = *to lead*

управля́ть = *to manage*

онъ управля́етъ моимъ имѣ́ніемъ = *he manages my property*

завѣ́дывать = *to look after*

она завѣ́дуетъ до́момъ = *she looks after the house*

пра́вить = *to drive*

онъ хорошо́ пра́вить лошадьми́ = *he drives a carriage* (lit. *horses*) *very well.*

дыша́ть = *to breathe*

па́хнуть = *to smell* (intrans.)

чѣмъ э́то па́хнетъ? = *what does this smell of?*

A very common and at first sight puzzling use of the instrumental is that called *predicative*. The predicate is put in the instrumental instead of in the nominative whenever any temporary or hypothetical condition is to be indicated, e.g.

когда́ я былъ ма́льчикомъ = *when I was a boy*

онъ бу́детъ вели́кимъ человѣ́комъ = *he is going to be a great man*

лежа́ніе у него́ не́ было ни необходи́мостью ни случа́йностью = *lying down was in his case neither a necessity nor an accident*

посла́ть . . . . заказны́мъ = *to send . . . registered.*

The predicative instrumental is used after the following verbs:

дѣ́латься
становиться } = *to become*

называ́ться = *to be called*

звать = *to call*

меня́ зову́тъ Ива́номъ = *they call me Ivan*, i.e. *my name is Ivan*

служи́ть = *to serve as*
э́то служи́ло мнѣ предло́гомъ = *this served me as an excuse*
счита́ться = *to be considered*
э́то счита́ется хоро́шимъ жа́лованіемъ = *that is considered good pay*
э́то счита́ется невѣ́жливымъ = *that is considered rude*
слыть = *to have the reputation*
роди́ться = *to be born*
каза́ться = *to seem*
дѣ́ло каза́лось серьёзнымъ = *the matter seemed serious*
притворя́ться = *to pretend to be.*

The instrumental is used after the following prepositions:

за = *behind, for (to get something)*
за грани́цей = *abroad* (lit. = *beyond the frontier*)
за столо́мъ = *at table*
за обѣ́домъ = *at dinner*
за́-городомъ = *out of town*
я пришёлъ за деньга́ми = *I have come for the money*
на́до посла́ть за до́кторомъ = (*we*) *must send for the doctor*
зачѣ́мъ ? = *why ?* (sc. *with what object ?*)
за тѣ́мъ чтобы + inf. = *in order to . . .*
затѣ́мъ = *after that, then.*

It is always used of a woman being married (cf. за + acc., § 83):

она́ за́мужемъ = *she is married*
за кѣ́мъ она́ за́мужемъ ? = *to whom is she married ?*

ме́жду = *between* (also but less often with gen.)
ме́жду Петрогра́домъ и Москво́й = *between Petrograd and Moscow*
между на́ми = *between us* (both of concrete objects and of émotions), *amongst us*
ме́жду про́чимъ = *amongst other things.*

Notice the idioms:

ме́жду тѣ́мъ = *meanwhile, cependant.*

надъ (надо before certain groups of consonants) = *above*
надъ голово́й = *above (my) head*
надо мно́й = *above me* (only literally)

пе́редъ (передо before certain groups of consonants) = *before, in front of*

пе́редъ до́момъ = *in front of the house*
пе́редо мно́й = *in front of me*
пе́редъ э́тимъ = *before this* (temporal)
пе́редъ обѣ́домъ = *before dinner*
пе́редъ тѣ́мъ какъ + inf. = *before* + verb (e.g. *going*).

подъ (подо before certain groups of consonants) = *under, near*

подъ землёй = *underground*
подо мно́й = *under me*
подъ э́тимъ усло́віемъ = *on this condition*
подъ каки́мъ предло́гомъ? = *under what pretext?*
подъ Москво́й = *near Moscow*
подъ Ло́ндономъ = *near London.*

съ (со before certain groups of consonants) = *with*

со мно́й = *with me*
съ большо́имъ удово́льствіемъ = *with great pleasure*
съ наслажде́ніемъ = *with relish*
съ трудо́мъ = *with difficulty*
со вре́менемъ = *in course of time*
съ кѣ́мъ вы говори́ли? = *with whom were you talking?*
съ како́й цѣ́лью? = *with what object?*
съ Бо́гомъ! = *good-bye!* (lit. *with God*)
Бо́гъ съ ни́ми! = *never mind them!* (lit. *God be with them*).

§ 85. **The Locative** is only used with prepositions, hence it is sometimes called the prepositional case.

The locative is used with the following prepositions:—

въ (во before certain groups of consonants) = *in*

въ Москвѣ́ = *in Moscow*
во мнѣ́ = *in me*
во Фра́нціи = *in France*
въ Крыму́ = *in the Crimea* (cf. § 39, Obs. 7)
въ концѣ́ = *at the end*
въ нача́лѣ = *at the beginning*
во снѣ́ = *in one's sleep* or *dreams.*

Notice the idioms:

въ концѣ-концóвъ = *at long last, finally*
въ сáмомъ дѣлѣ = *in very fact.*

In certain expressions of time:

въ слѣдующемъ годý = *the following year*
въ такóмъ-то годý = *such and such a year*
въ пéрвомъ часý = *between 12 and 1*
во второмъ часý = *between 1 and 2.*

For other similar expressions, cf. § 68.

втайнѣ = *secretly*
впослѣдствіи = *subsequently*
вполнѣ = *completely, thoroughly.*

на = *on*

на столѣ = *on the table*
на берегý мóря = *on the sea-shore, at the seaside*
на бокý = *on (one's) side*
на сóлнцѣ = *in the sun*
на дворѣ = *in the yard*

(this is the commonest way of saying *out of doors*)

на льдý = *on the ice* (fr. лёдъ)
на мостý = *on the bridge*
на слýжбѣ = *in service* (sc. *Government service*)
на нéбѣ = *in heaven, in the sky*
на свѣжемъ вóздухѣ = *in the fresh air*
на свѣтѣ = *in the world*
на свобóдѣ = *at liberty.*

Notice the idioms:

на своёмъ вѣкý = *in one's time, in one's life*
наявý = *in reality* (as opposed to *in one's sleep*)
на лошадúхъ = *by carriage, driving* (lit. = *on horses*)
на-единѣ = *alone, in solitude.*

It is used of men marrying, after the verb женúться = *to marry*:

онъ женúлся на рýсской = *he married a Russian*
на кóмъ онъ женáтъ? = *to whom is he married?*

Notice the compound adverb:

наканý нѣ = *on the eve.*

о (объ before vowels and often before consonants also; обо before certain groups of consonants) = *concerning*

обо мнѣ́ = *about me*

о or объ чёмъ вы говори́ли? = *what were you talking about?*

обо всёмъ = *about everything.*

In certain expressions of number:

о двýхъ концáхъ = *with two ends.*

по = *after*

по пріѣ́здѣ = *on* or *after arrival*

по на́шемъ возвращéніи = *on our return.*

Notice the idioms:

скучáть по рóдинѣ = *to be home-sick (for one's country)*

по чёмъ? = *at what price?*

по чёмъ аршúнъ? = *how much a yard?* cf. § 69.

при = *in the presence of, in the time of, near*

при мнѣ́ = *in my presence, in my time, by me, near me, on me*

при дворѣ́ = *at court*

при Екатери́нѣ Вели́кой = *in the time of Catherine the Great*

при бúтвѣ подъ Лéйпцигомъ = *at the battle of* (lit. *near, under*) *Leipzig.*

Notice the idioms:

при чёмъ = *in addition to which, besides which*

при томъ = *besides that*

при всёмъ томъ = *in addition to all that, in spite of all that*

при всёмъ моёмъ стара́ніи = *in spite of all my efforts.*

THE VERB

§ 86. The Russian verb consists of the following parts:

Present	Active
Past	Active
Future	Active
Conditional	Active
—	Active
Imperative	Active
—	Active
Infinitive	Active
—	Active
Present Gerund	Active
Past Gerund	Active
—	Active
Present Participle	Active
Past Participle	Active
Present Participle	Passive
Past Participle	Passive

The present is the only tense which has personal endings. The past is a tense only in name; in reality it is a participle whose endings vary not according to person, but according to number and gender. The future in form is exactly the same as the present. The conditional in form is exactly the same as the past. There is no subjunctive. There is no passive of any part of the verb except the participles, and if anything is expressed in the passive, it must be done by means of participles or of the reflexive verb (cf. § 110).

Use of the Personal Pronouns with the Verb.

The personal pronouns:

я	= *I*
ты	= *thou*
онъ, она́, оно́	= *he, she, it*
мы	= *we*
вы	= *you*
они́ (M. N.), они́ (F.)	= *they*

are used in Russian with the verbs very much as in English; in certain cases they are, however, omitted altogether, e.g. when the verb is used, as it frequently is, in an answer in reply to a question instead of да (= *yes*) or нѣтъ (= *no*), e.g.:

Question: бы́ли-ли вы у нихъ вчера́? = *did you go to see them yesterday?* (lit. *were you at their house?*)

Answer: былъ = *I did* (lit. *I was*)

Question: бу́дете-ли вы у него́ сего́дня? = *will you go to see him to-day?*

Answer: бу́ду = *I shall*

Question: мо́жете-ли вы сдѣлать э́то для меня́? = *can you do this for me?*

Answer: могу́ = *I can.*

The pronoun оно́ is comparatively rarely used; its place is often taken by э́то, e.g.

э́то бы́ло о́чень давно́ = *it was a very long time ago*

or it is omitted altogether, e.g.

тепло́ сего́дня = *it is warm to-day.*

When it is used it often acquires the meaning of *the thing we were referring to* or *what you were talking about*, e.g.

оно́, коне́чно, непрія́тно = (*a thing like*) *that* (sc. *which we were discussing*) *is, of course, unpleasant.*

§ 87. The Present.

REGULAR VERBS.

In Old Bulgarian the verbs are divided into five classes, and for etymological purposes Russian verbs can be similarly treated. For practical purposes, however, it is best to divide the verbs into only two classes, not according to the infinitive, but according to the endings of the present. The few irregular verbs which there are, which in Old Bulgarian form the fifth class, are in Russian not sufficiently numerous to form a class by themselves, but as they are very important they are given in full in a separate paragraph. For the regular verbs there are two sets of personal endings, which are added to the verb-stem sometimes directly,

sometimes with a vowel (-а-, -я-, -ѣ-, -у-, -ю-) or a consonant (-и-) inserted between stem and ending.

The first difficulty to be faced is the fact that though every present may be put in one class or the other, the infinitives are much more difficult to classify, because verbs having various infinitive endings have identical present endings, and others having identical infinitive endings have different present endings. In the lists of verbs given they are arranged alphabetically according to the last letter of the present stem as seen in the 2nd pers. sing., those ending in consonants + у first, those ending in vowels + ю later.

Another difficulty is that the palatal qualities of the vowels in the personal endings have in many cases affected the last consonant of the stem, so that the present stem differs from the infinitive stem. The present endings of the two main classes of Russian verbs are the following:

		I.	II.
Sing.	1	-у (or -ю)	-ю (or -у)
	2	-ешь[1]	-ишь
	3	-етъ	-итъ
Plur.	1	-емъ	-имъ
	2	-ете	-ите
	3	-утъ (or -ютъ)	-ятъ (or -атъ)[2]

Class I comprises all the verbs contained in the first three classes in Old Bulgarian; in that language the endings of class I were 2nd sing. **-ЄШИ**, 3rd sing. **-ЄТ҃Ъ** (*-eši*, *-et*, cf. § 36), &c., of class II **-НЄШИ**, **-НЄТ҃Ъ** (*-neši*, *-net*), of class III **-ІЄШИ**, **-ІЄТ҃Ъ** (*-ješi*, *-jet*); in Russian these appear respectively as *-ješ'*, *-jet*, *-nje'*, *-njet*, and *-ješ'*, *-jet*, i.e. the 2nd and 3rd sing. and 1st and 2nd pl. all begin with *-je* (pron. *-ye*). Of the verbs which originally belonged to class I, those whose stems end in г or к change these letters to ж and ч before the palatal vowels of the endings *-e'*, *-je'*, &c., but retain the г and к before the -у of the 1st sing. and 3rd plur. The

[1] When the accent falls on the personal ending the 2nd and 3rd sing. and 1st and 2nd pl. of class I are pronounced: -ёшь (cf. § 14), -ётъ, -ёмъ, -ёте.

[2] When unaccented these endings (3rd plur. of class II) are generally pronounced -ютъ (or -утъ).

stems of the verbs which insert -н- between the stem and the personal ending undergo no change. Of the verbs which originally belonged to class III, those whose stems end in vowels take the endings -ю, -ешь, -етъ, -емъ, -ете, -ютъ, those whose stems end in consonants changed them (except in the case of those in -л and of a few in -р) before the palatal vowels of the personal endings *-ju*, *-je/*, &c., in such a way as to absorb the *y*-sound contained in them, viz. final к, т of a stem becomes ч, or щ, final г, д, з become ж, and final с and х become ш, the personal endings appearing as -чу, -чешь, -жу, -жешь, -шу, -шешь, and -щу, -щешь.

In class II the first person singular is often disguised as -у (i.e. apparently the same as in class I); the reason is that the -ю of the 1st sing. changes final к and т of the stem into ч or щ, final г, д, and з into ж, and final с and х into ш. It also becomes у when the stem itself ends in ч, ж, or ш. Similarly the я of the 3rd plur. becomes а when the stem ends in ч, ж, or ш. In class II those stems which end in п, б, в, and м insert л before the -ю of the 1st sing.

Another difficulty which the beginner has to face is that of the prepositions in composition with the verbs. Verbs compounded with a preposition (i. e. preceded by it) are infinitely more numerous than those without, and this fact makes the beginner think at first sight that the language possesses an infinitely larger number of verbs than it really does. When reading Russian the beginner should always try and see the root or stem of each verb and cut off the preposition or prepositions which precede it. For this purpose it is important to learn the prepositions given in §§ 79–85, and also to compare them with those given in dealing with prepositions in composition with verbs. As the prepositions always have an especial effect on the meaning of each verb, only simple verbs have been given in the following lists, the alteration in meaning effected by the various prepositions being discussed later. Many of the verbs given in these lists are extremely uncommon, others not used in their simple form; the student should not attempt to learn the lists, but only use them for reference. The list of the verbs under class I contains all the difficult primary verbs which belong to this class; otherwise the lists given are very far from being exhaustive; they are merely intended to be representative. The verbs are arranged alpha-

betically according to the last letter of the present stem, those ending in a consonant + у first, those ending in a consonant + ю next, and lastly those ending in a vowel + ю. Only the 1st and 2nd persons sing. and the infinitive are given. In class I, whenever the 1st sing. ends in -у the 3rd pl. ends in -утъ, when the 1st sing. ends in -ю the 3rd pl. ends in -ютъ. In both classes, on whichever syllable the accent is in the 2nd sing., that syllable retains it throughout. Those verbs preceded by a hyphen are only used in composition, and examples of them compounded with prepositions are given below. All those verbs marked with F are perfective and their presents always have future meaning, cf. § 101:

§ 88. CLASS I.

Examples of presents:

(Inf. мочь)	(Inf. идти[1])
могу́ = *I can*	иду́ = *I am going* (sc. *on foot*)
мо́жешь	идёшь
мо́жетъ	идётъ
мо́жемъ	идёмъ
мо́жете	идёте
мо́гутъ	иду́тъ

(Inf. тяну́ть)	(Inf. брать)
тяну́ = *I am pulling*	беру́ = *I take, I am taking*
тя́нешь	берёшь
тя́нетъ	берётъ
тя́немъ	берёмъ
тя́нете	берёте
тя́нутъ	беру́тъ

(Inf. писа́ть)	(Inf. слать)
пишу́ = *I write, I am writing*	шлю[2] = *I am sending*
пи́шешь	шлёшь
пи́шетъ	шлётъ
пи́шемъ	шлёмъ
пи́шете	шлёте
пи́шутъ	шлютъ

[1] Also spelt итти́.

[2] In the case of this verb the palatal quality of the personal endings has affected the с of the stem through the л.

(Inf. дѣла́ть)	(Inf. пить)
дѣ́лаю = *I do, I am doing*	пью = *I drink, I am drinking*
дѣ́лаешь	пьёшь
дѣ́лаетъ	пьётъ
дѣ́лаемъ	пьёмъ
дѣ́лаете	пьёте
дѣлаютъ	пьютъ

Thus are conjugated the presents of the following verbs *and others*:

Present.		*Infinitive.*	
·б+			
гребу́	гребёшь	грести́	*row*
скребу́	скребёшь	скрести́	*scrape*
-шибу́[1]	-шибёшь F	-шиби́ть	(*hit*)
·в+			
реву́	ревёшь	реве́ть	*roar*
живу́	живёшь	жить	*live*
зову́	зовёшь	звать	*call*
рву́	рвёшь	рвать	*tear*
плыву́	плывёшь	плыть	*float*
слыву́	слывёшь	слыть	*be renowned as*
-г+	[ж = г+(j)е]		
берегу́	бережёшь	бере́чь	*keep*
стерегу́	стережёшь	стере́чь	*guard*
жгу	жжёшь	жечь	*burn* (trans.)
стригу́	стрижёшь	стричь	*shear*
лгу	лжёшь	лгать	*prevaricate*
могу́	мо́жешь	мочь	*be able*
бѣгу́ (cf. § 89)	——	бѣжа́ть	*run*
ля́гу	ля́жешь F	лечь	*lie down*
·прягу́[2]	·пряжёшь F	·прячь	(*harness*)
д+			
кладу́	кладёшь	класть	*put*
паду́	падёшь	пасть	*fall*

[1] e.g. ушиби́ть = *to bruise.*
[2] e.g. запря́чь = *to harness.*

Present.		*Infinitive.*	
краду́	крадёшь	красть	*steal*
веду́	ведёшь	вести́	*lead*
бреду́	бредёшь	брести́	*wander*
жду	ждёшь	ждать	*(a)wait*
иду́	идёшь	идти́	*go* (sc. *on foot*)
бу́ду	бу́дешь	быть	*be*
блюду́	блюдёшь	блюсти́	*watch*
е́ду (cf. § 89)	е́дешь	е́хать	*ride, drive*
пряду́	прядёшь	прясть	*spin*
ся́ду	ся́дешь F	сесть	*sit down*
ж + (=г, д, з + *-ju*)	(=г, д, з + *-je-*)		
-кажу́ [1]	-ка́жешь F	-каза́ть	(*show*)
ма́жу	ма́жешь	ма́зать	*smear*
бры́жжу [2]	бры́зжешь	бры́згать	*splash*
лижу́	ли́жешь	лиза́ть	*lick*
гложу́	гло́жешь	глода́ть	*gnaw*
ржу	ржёшь	ржать	*neigh*
ре́жу	ре́жешь	ре́зать	*cut*
вяжу́	вя́жешь	вяза́ть	*bind, knit*
з +			
везу́	везёшь	везти́	*convey*
ползу́	ползёшь	ползти́	*crawl*
грызу́	грызёшь	грызть	*gnaw*
лезу	ле́зешь	ле́зть	*clamber*
к +	(ч = к + (*j*)*e*)		
влеку́	влечёшь	влечь	*draw*
пеку́	печёшь	печь	*bake*
теку́	течёшь	течь	*flow*
толку́	толчёшь	толо́чь	*knock*
волоку́ [3]	волочёшь	воло́чь	*drag*
тку	тчёшь	ткать	*weave*
секу́	сечёшь	сечь	*cut, flog*

[1] e.g. сказа́ть = *to say*, показа́ть = *to show*, but the reflexive каза́ться = *to seem* is used in the simple form.

[2] Also бры́згаю, &c.

[3] Also волочу́, воло́чишь, волочи́ть (class II).

Present.			*Infinitive.*	
м +				
жму	жмёшь		жать	*squeeze*
-ниму́ [1]	-ни́мешь	F	-ня́ть	*(take)*
-иму́ [2]	-и́мешь	F		
-ьму́ [3]	-ьмёшь	F	-ять	
н +				
ста́ну	ста́нешь	F	стать	*become, begin* (intrans.)
гну	гнёшь		гнуть	*bend*
жну	жнёшь		жать	*reap*
мну	мнёшь		мять	*crush*
стону́	сто́нешь		стона́ть [4]	*groan*
-пну [5]	-пнёшь	F	-пять	*(stretch)*
-чну [6]	-чнёшь	F	-чать	*(begin)*
дну́	дне́шь	F	дть	*put*
кляну́	клянёшь		клясть	*curse*
тяну́	тя́нешь		тяну́ть	*pull*
Verbs connoting a gradual process:				
мёрзну	мёрзнешь		мёрзнуть	*be frozen*
мо́кну	мо́кнешь		мо́кнуть	*be soaked*
га́сну	га́снешь		га́снуть	*die down*
ки́сну	ки́снешь		ки́снуть	*grow sour*
ти́хну	ти́хнешь		ти́хнуть	*grow quiet*
со́хну	со́хнешь		со́хнуть	*grow dry*
тону́	то́нешь		тону́ть	*drown* (intrans.)
сты́ну	сты́нешь		сты́нуть	*grow cold*
Verbs connoting a single action:				
дви́ну	дви́нешь	F	дви́нуть	*move* (trans.)
ки́ну	ки́нешь	F	ки́нуть	*throw*
кри́кну	кри́кнешь	F	кри́кнуть	*cry out*
тро́ну	тро́нешь	F	тро́нуть	*touch*
шепну́	шепнёшь	F	шепну́ть	*whisper*

[1] e.g. обниму́, обни́мешь, обня́ть = *to embrace.*
снимý, сни́мешь, снять = *to take off, to photograph.*
[2] e.g. приму́, при́мешь, приня́ть = *to accept.*
[3] e.g. возьму́, возьмёшь, взять = *to take.*
[4] Also has present стона́ю, стона́ешь.
[5] e.g. распя́ть = *to crucify.*
[6] e.g. нача́ть = *to begin* (trans.).

Present.			*Infinitive.*	
р+				
вру	врёшь		врать	*prevaricate*
беру́	берёшь		брать	*take*
деру́	дерёшь		драть	*tear*
жру́	жрёшь		жрать	*devour*
-мру[1]	-мрёшь	F	-мере́ть	(*die*)
-пру[2]	-прёшь	F	-пере́ть	(*press*)
тру	трёшь		тере́ть	*rub*
-стру[3]	-стрёшь	F	-стере́ть	(*stretch*)
с+				
пасу́	пасёшь		пасти́	*pasture*
несу́	несёшь		нести́	*carry*
трясу́	трясёшь		трясти́	*shake* (trans.)
т+				
плету́	плетёшь		плести́	*plait*
мету́	метёшь		мести́	*sweep*
гнету́	гнетёшь		гнести́	*press, oppress*
расту́[4]	растёшь		расти́	*grow* (intrans.)
-чту[5]	-чтёшь	F	-честь	(*read*)
цвѣту́	цвѣтёшь		цвѣсти́	*blossom*
-рѣту́[6]	-рѣтёшь	F	-рѣсти́	(*obtain*)
ч+(=к, т+*-ju*)	(=к, т+*-je-*)			
пла́чу	пла́чешь		пла́кать	*weep*
мечу́	ме́чешь		мета́ть	*fling*
хочу́ (cf. § 89)	хо́чешь		хотѣ́ть	*wish*
хохочу́	хохо́чешь		хохота́ть	*laugh loud*
шепчу́	ше́пчешь		шепта́ть	*whisper*
топчу́	то́пчешь		топта́ть	*tread* (trans.)
пря́чу	пря́чешь		пря́тать	*hide* (trans.)
ш+(=с, х+*-ju*)	(=с, х+*-je-*)			
машу́[7]	ма́шешь		маха́ть	*wave*
пашу́	па́шешь		паха́ть	*plough*
чешу́[8]	че́шешь		чеса́ть	*comb*

[1] e.g. умере́ть = *to die.*
[2] e.g. запере́ть = *to close.*
[3] e.g. простере́ть = *to extend.*
[4] Also spelt расту́, растёшь, &c.
[5] e.g. проче́сть = *to read through.*
[6] e.g. пріобрѣсти́ = *to obtain.*
[7] Also has маха́ю, маха́ешь.
[8] Cf. the impersonal reflexive че́шется = *it itches.*

Present.		*Infinitive.*	
пишу́	пи́шешь	писа́ть	*write*
пляшу́	пля́шешь	плеса́ть	*dance*
щ + (= ск + *-ju* and т + *-ju*)	(= ск + *-je-* and т + *-je-*)		
трепещу́	трепе́щешь	трепета́ть	*tremble*
ищу́	и́щешь	иска́ть	*look for*
ропщу́	ро́пщешь	ропта́ть	*murmur*
л +			
коле́блю	коле́блешь	колеба́ть	*rock*
мелю́ (cf. § 89)	ме́лешь	моло́ть	*grind (corn)*
стелю́	сте́лешь	стлать	*spread*
вне́млю [1]	вне́млешь	внима́ть	*heed*
дремлю́	дре́млешь	дрема́ть	*slumber*
колю́	ко́лешь	коло́ть	*pierce*
полю́	по́лешь	коло́ть	*unstitch*
сы́плю	сы́плешь	сы́пать	*scatter*
шлю (cf. p. 150)	шлёшь	слать	*send*
р +			
борю́сь (cf. § 100)	бо́решься	боро́ться	*struggle*
порю́	по́решь	поро́ть	*rake*
а +			
даю́	даёшь	дава́ть	*give*
ла́ю	ла́ешь	ла́ять	*bark*
де́лаю	де́лаешь	де́лать	*do, make*
зна́ю	зна́ешь	знать	*know*
-знаю́ [2]	-знаёшь	-знава́ть	*(recognize)*
игра́ю	игра́ешь	игра́ть	*play*
та́ю	та́ешь	та́ять	*thaw, melt*
чита́ю	чита́ешь	чита́ть	*read*
-стаю́ [3]	-стаёшь	-става́ть	*(become)*
-лучаю́ [4]	-луча́ешь	-луча́ть	*(receive)*

and very many others.

---

[1] Also has present внима́ю, &c.
[2] e.g. узнава́ть = *to recognize.*
[3] e.g. устава́ть = *to grow tired,* and numerous other compounds.
[4] e.g. получа́ть = *to receive.*

Present.		*Infinitive.*	
i +			
гнію́	гніёшь	гнить	*rot*
вопію́	вопіёшь	вопія́ть[1]	*wail*
o +			
во́ю	во́ешь	выть	*howl*
мо́ю	мо́ешь	мыть	*wash* (trans.)
но́ю	но́ешь	ныть	*ache*
пою́	поёшь	пе́ть	*sing*
ро́ю	ро́ешь	рыть	*dig*
кро́ю	кро́ешь	крыть	*cover*
у +			
торгу́ю	торгу́ешь	торгова́ть	*trade*
жую́	жуёшь	жева́ть	*chew*
кую́	куёшь	кова́ть	*forge*
сную́	снуёшь	снова́ть	*weave*
су́ю	су́ешь	сова́ть	*poke*
сове́тую	сове́туешь	сове́товать	*advise*
танцу́ю	танцу́ешь	танцовать	*dance*
чу́ю	чу́ешь	чу́ять	*scent*
ночу́ю	ночу́ешь	ночева́ть	*pass the night*
по́тчую	по́тчуешь	по́тчевать	*treat*

and many others, including those formed from non-Russian words (of which the infinitive usually ends in -ировать), e.g.

аплоди́рую	аплоди́руешь	аплоди́ровать	*applaud*
формиру́ю	формиру́ешь	формирова́ть	*form*
ь +			
бью	бьёшь	бить	*hit*
вью	вьёшь	вить	*wind*
лью	льёшь	лить	*pour*
пью	пьёшь	пить	*drink*
шью	шьёшь	шить	*sew*
ѣ +			
вѣ́ю	вѣ́ешь	вѣ́ять	*waft*
-дѣ́юсь[2] (cf. §100)	-дѣ́ешься	-дѣ́яться	(*hope*)

[1] Has alternative form вопло́, вопи́шь, вопи́ть (class II).

[2] надѣ́юсь, надѣ́ешься, надѣ́яться = *to hope*.

Present.		*Infinitive.*	
бѣлѣю	бѣлѣешь	бѣлѣть	*show white*
имѣю	имѣешь	имѣть	*have, possess*
смѣю	смѣешь	смѣть	*dare*
смѣюсь (cf. §100)	смѣёшься	смѣяться	*laugh*
умѣю	умѣешь	умѣть	*know how to*
спѣю [1]	спѣешь	спѣть	*ripen*
старѣю	старѣешь	старѣть	*grow old*
брѣю [2]	брѣешь	брить	*shave*
грѣю	грѣешь	грѣть	*warm*
зрѣю [3]	зрѣешь	зрѣть	*ripen*
сѣю	сѣешь	сѣять	*sow*
-тѣю [4]	-тѣешь F	-тѣять	(*plan*)
ю +			
блюю́	блюёшь	блева́ть	*vomit*
клюю́	клюёшь	клева́ть	*peck*
плюю́	плюёшь	плева́ть	*spit*
воюю	воюешь	воева́ть	*make war*
горюю	горюешь	горева́ть	*mourn*
я +			
ваяю	ваяешь	ва́ять	*sculpt*
гуляю	гуляешь	гуля́ть	*walk*
-виняюсь [5] (cf. §100)	-виняешься	-виня́ться	(*excuse*)

CLASS II.

(Inf. люби́ть)	(Inf. ви́дѣть)
люблю́ = *I love*	ви́жу = *I see*
лю́бишь	ви́дишь
лю́бить	ви́дить
лю́бимъ	ви́димъ
лю́бите	ви́дите
лю́бятъ	ви́дятъ

---

[1] Not to be confused with спою́, спѣть a compound of пѣть.
[2] Also spelt бре́ю, &c.
[3] Not to be confused with зрю, зрѣть (class II) = *to see*.
[4] затѣю, &c. = *to plan, contrive*.
[5] извиня́ться = *to excuse oneself*.

(Inf. лежа́ть)	(Inf. спать)
лежу́ = *I lie, am lying*	сплю
лежи́шь	спишь
лежи́тъ	спитъ
лежи́мъ	спимъ
лежи́те	спи́те
лежа́тъ	спятъ

(Inf. говори́ть)	(Inf. плати́ть)
говорю́ = *I speak, am speaking* / *I say, am saying*	плачу́ = *I pay*
говори́шь	пла́тишь [1]
говори́тъ	пла́титъ [1]
говори́мъ	пла́тимъ [1]
говори́те	пла́тите [1]
говоря́тъ	пла́тятъ [1]

(Inf. учи́ть)	(Inf, слы́шать)
учу́ = *I teach*	слы́шу = *I hear*
у́чишь	слы́шишь
у́читъ	слы́шитъ
у́чимъ	слы́шимъ
у́чите	слы́шите
у́чатъ	слы́шатъ

Thus are conjugated the presents of the following verbs *and others*:

Present.		*Infinitive.*	
б +			
люблю́	лю́бишь	люби́ть	*love*
в +			
ловлю́	ло́вишь	лови́ть	*catch*

[1] The accented a in all these five persons is usually pronounced like accented o in the case of this verb.

Present.		*Infinitive.*	
(г + becomes ж) (д + becomes ж in 1st pers. sing.)	д +		
ла́жу	ла́дишь	ла́дить	*agree*
гла́жу	гла́дишь	гла́дить	*stroke*
ви́жу	ви́дишь	ви́деть	*see*
сижу́	сиди́шь	сидѣ́ть	*sit*
вожу́	во́дишь	води́ть	*lead*
хожу́	хо́дишь	ходи́ть	*go* (sc. *on foot*)
гожу́сь (cf. §100)	годи́шься	годи́ться	*be of use*
горжу́сь („)	гордишься	гордиться	*be proud*
гляжу́	гляди́шь	глядѣ́ть	*look*
ж + (= г +)			
лежу́	лежи́шь	лежа́ть	*lie*
дрожу́	дрожи́шь	дрожа́ть	*tremble*
держу́	де́ржишь	держа́ть	*keep, hold*
——	бѣжи́шь (cf. §89)	бѣжа́ть	*run*
(з + becomes ж in 1st pers. sing.)	з +		
ла́жу	ла́зишь	ла́зить	*clamber*
вожу́	во́зишь	вози́ть	*convey*
(к + becomes ч) л +			
вел(ю́)	вели́шь	велѣ́ть	*command*
боли́т	боля́т (impersonal)	болѣ́ть	*ache*
молю́сь (cf. §100)	мо́лишься	моли́ться	*pray*
м +			
шумл(ю́)	шуми́шь	шумѣ́ть	*make a noise*
н +			
вин(ю́)	вини́шь	вини́ть	*blame*
гон(ю́)	го́нишь	гнать	*chase*
п +			
сплю	спишь	спать	*sleep*
терпл(ю́)	те́рпишь	терпѣ́ть	*endure*
торопл(ю́сь (cf. §100)	торо́пишься	торопи́ться	*hurry*

Present.		*Infinitive.*	
р+			
говорю́	говори́шь	говори́ть	*speak, say*
горю́	гори́шь	горе́ть	*burn* (intrans.)
смотрю́	смо́тришь	смотре́ть	*look* (*at*)
курю́	ку́ришь	кури́ть	*smoke*
(с+ becomes ш in 1st pers. sing.)	с+		
кра́шу	кра́сишь	кра́сить	*paint* (sc. *walls*)
вишу́	виси́шь	висе́ть	*hang* (intrans.)
ношу́	но́сишь	носи́ть	*wear, carry*
(т+ becomes ч or щ in 1st pers. sing.)	т+		
плачу́	пла́тишь[1]	плати́ть	*pay*
лечу́	лети́шь	лете́ть	*fly*
верчу́	ве́ртишь	верте́ть	*turn, twist*
блещу́	блести́шь	блесте́ть	*shine*
——	хоти́мъ, &c. (cf. § 89)	хоте́ть	*wish*
пущу́	пу́стишь	пусти́ть	*allow, let go*
-сѣщу́[2]	-сѣти́шь F	-сѣти́ть	(*visit*)
(х+ beomes ш) ч+ (= к+)			
кричу́	кричи́шь	крича́ть	*shout*
молчу́	молчи́шь	молча́ть	*be silent*
учу́[3]	у́чишь	учи́ть	*teach*
ш+ (= х+)			
слы́шу	слы́шишь	слы́шать	*hear*
and very many others.			
о+			
бою́сь (cf. § 100)	бои́шься	боя́ться	*fear*
сто́ю	сто́ишь	сто́ить	*cost, be worth*
стою́	стои́шь	стоя́ть	*stand*

[1] N.B. The a in all the persons of the present of this verb except the 1st sing. is usually pronounced like accented о.

[2] посѣти́ть = *to visit.*

[3] The reflexive учи́ться = *to learn.*

§ 89. Irregular Verbs.

These are not really irregular at all, but merely the remains of an old conjugation.

3rd sing. есть = *is*
3rd plur. суть = *are*

are all that is left of the present of the verb быть = *to be* (cf. §§ 81, 112).

ѣмъ = *I eat, I am eating*

(Inf. ѣсть)

Sing.	1	ѣмъ	Plur.	1	ѣди́мъ
	2	ѣшь		2	ѣди́те
	3	ѣстъ		3	ѣдя́ть

N.B. For the 2nd sing. and plur. ку́шать is more often used.

дамъ = *I shall give*

(Inf. дать)

Sing.	1	дамъ	Plur.	1	дади́мъ
	2	дашь		2	дадите
	3	дасть		3	даду́ть

[вѣмъ = *I know*, obsolete except in the phrase Богъ вѣстъ = *God knows*, still sometimes used; a part, the imperative sing., still survives in the very common conjunction вѣдь = *for*, equivalent to the French *donc* or *mais voyons*.]

The following two verbs are partly irregular, and as they are very common deserve special attention:

	бѣгу́ = *I am running*	хочу́ = *I want, wish*
	(Inf. бѣжа́ть)	(Inf. хотѣ́ть)
Sing. 1	бѣгу́	хочу́
Sing. 2	бѣжи́шь	хо́чешь
Sing. 3	бѣжи́ть	хо́четъ
Plur. 1	бѣжи́мъ	хоти́мъ
Plur. 2	бѣжите	хоти́те
Plur. 3	бѣгу́ть	хо́тятъ

The very common present

Sing.	1	ѣ́ду = *I am going* (sc. on horseback or in
	2	ѣ́дешь any form of conveyance but
	3	ѣ́детъ not on foot)
Plur.	1	ѣ́демъ
	2	ѣ́дете
	3	ѣ́дутъ

has an infinitive ѣ́хать.

моло́ть = *to grind*, pres. мелю́, ме́лешь, may also be classed as irregular.

§ 90. The Past.

As mentioned on p. 146 the past in Russian is a tense only in name. In reality it is a past participle active which formerly was used with the help of the present of the verb быть = *to be*, as a compound perfect tense like the German *ich bin gewesen*. When this present became obsolete the past participle came to be used alone as the past tense and is now not felt to be a participle at all. It is formed from the infinitive, the general rule being to cut off the last two letters (-ть or -ти) and substitute:

-лъ for the masc. sing.
-ла „ fem. sing. } all three persons
-ло „ neut. sing.
and -ли „ masc. fem. and neut. plur. all three persons.

In the singular it must always agree in gender with the subject of the sentence, whatever person it be, except, of course, that the neuter sing. in -ло is only used for the 3rd pers. sing.

The personal pronouns must be prefixed as required, e. g. я, ты, онъ, она́, оно́ for the sing., according to gender, and мы, вы, они́, онѣ́ for the plur., but they are often omitted.

There is absolutely no difficulty in forming the past from any verb the infinitive of which ends in

-ать, -ять, -ѣть, -ить, or -оть.

This includes all the verbs in class II and most of those in class I. The only difficulty is in the accent. This sometimes falls on the ending and sometimes not; it is best learnt by observation and practice.

Examples are given of the pasts of verbs in class II, and of those of class I whose infinitives end as indicated above:

1, 2, 3 *Sing.*	1, 2, 3 *Plur.*	*Inf.*
M. знáлъ F. знá́ла N. знá́ло	знá́ли	знать = *know*
M. смѣ́ялся F. смѣ́ялась N. смѣ́ялось	смѣ́ялись	смѣ́яться = *laugh*
M. ви́дѣлъ F. ви́дѣла N. ви́дѣло	ви́дѣли	ви́дѣть = *see*
M. мылъ F. мы́ла N. мы́ло	мы́ли	мыть = *wash* (trans.)
M. пилъ F. пила́ N. пи́ло	пи́ли	пить = *drink*
M. боро́лся F. боро́лась N. боро́лось	боро́лись	боро́ться = *struggle*

In the case of the verbs of class I, all those of which the infinitive ends in -ать, -ять, -ѣть, -ыть, or -ить are formed in exactly the same way as those just mentioned, e.g. сталъ, ста́ла, ста́ло, ста́ли; былъ, была́, бы́ло, бы́ли; дѣлъ, дѣ́ла, дѣ́ло, дѣ́ли; жилъ, жила́, жи́ло, жи́ли, from стать, дѣть, быть, and жить. In the case of the others, i.e. of those the stem of which ends in a consonant and the infinitive in -ти, -зти, -зть, -сти, -сть, -еть, -ѣчь, -ечь, -ичь, -очь, -ячь, and those with infinitives in -нуть, the formation of the past is a little more difficult.

One reason is that the infinitive sometimes disguises the end of the stem, and it is to the stem (ending in a consonant) that the endings of the past have to be added, and another is that some of the stems undergo phonetic changes when followed by the -лъ of the past. The stem can always be found in the 2nd sing. of the present by cutting off the personal endings -ешь or -нешь.

Stems ending in -с, -з, -к, -г, -б, -р lose the -лъ of the masculine singular past (those in -р being formed from the infinitive stem, e.g. from тер- and not from тр-), e.g.

M. нёсъ F. несла́ N. несло́	несли́	нести́ = *carry*
M. вёзъ F. везла́ N. везло́	везли́	везти́ = *convey*
M. тёкъ F. текла́ N. текло́	текли́	течь = *flow*
M. могъ F. могла́ N. могло́	могли́	мочь = *be able*
M. грёбъ F. гребла́ N. гребло́	гребли́	грести́ = *row*
M. тёръ F. тёрла N. тёрло	тёрли	тере́ть = *rub*

Stems ending in -д, -т lose these consonants before all the endings beginning with л, e.g.

M. вёлъ F. вела́ N. вело́	вели́	вести́ = *lead*
M. мёлъ F. мела́ N. мело́	мели́	мести́ = *sweep*

Of the verbs whose infinitives end in -нуть, the majority form their past in the ordinary way, e.g.[1]

M. тро́нулъ F. тро́нула N. тро́нуло	тро́нули	тро́нуть = *touch*

[1] N.B. дви́нуть when compounded with the preposition, воз-, inserts again the г of its stem, viz. воздви́гнуть = *to erect*, the past of which is воздви́гъ, воздви́гла, &c.; but not when compounded with other prepositions. Исчезнуть = *to disappear* has both исче́зъ and исче́знулъ.

but those verbs of this class which have so-called inchoative meaning, i.e. denote a process of any sort, lose the syllable -ну- and add the terminations direct to the real stem (after stems ending in -х, -с, -к, -з the -ть falls off), e.g.[1]

Sing.	*Plur.*	*Inf.*
M. сохъ F. со́хла N. со́хло	со́хли	со́хнуть = *become dry*
M. кисъ F. ки́сла N. ки́сло	ки́сли	ки́снуть = *grow sour*
M. мокъ F. мо́кла N. мо́кло	мо́кли	мо́кнуть = *grow wet*
M. стылъ F. сты́ла N. сты́ло	сты́ли	сты́нуть = *grow cold*

The pasts of the following verbs of class I must be mentioned individually, being somewhat unexpected; to them are added those of the irregular verbs:

Sing.	*Plur.*	*Inf.*
M. -чёлъ F. -чла́ N. -чло́	-чли	-честь = (*read*)
M. сѣлъ F. сѣ́ла N. сѣ́ло	сѣ́ли	сѣсть = *sit down*

[1] ги́бнуть = *to perish*, has an alternative form ги́нуть; the past of the first is either гибъ, ги́бла, or ги́бнулъ, &c., that of the second ги́нулъ, &c., and in compounds, e.g. поги́бнуть, only поги́бъ, поги́бла, &c. Several other verbs of this category have both forms of past, but all have the shorter form as given above.

	Sing.	*Plur.*	*Inf.*
M.	рос*ъ*		
F.	росла	росли́	расти́ = *grow*
N.	росло́		
M.	кля́л*ъ*		
F.	кляла́	кля́ли	кля́сть = *curse*
N.	кляло́		
M.	лёг*ъ*		
F.	легла́	легли́	лечь = *lie down*
N.	легло́		
M.	жёг*ъ*		
F.	жгла	жгли	жечь = *burn* (trans.)
N.	жгло		
M.	-шиб*ъ*		
F.	-шибла	-шиби́ли	-шиби́ть = (*hit*)
N.	-шибло		
M.	е́л*ъ*		
F.	е́ла	е́ли	е́сть = *eat*
N.	е́ло		
M.	дал*ъ*		
F.	дала́	да́ли	дать = *give*
N.	дало́		

Notice especially

M.	шёл*ъ*		
F.	шла	шли	идти́ = *go*
N.	шло		

хоте́ть has хоте́л*ъ* хоте́ла хоте́ло — хоте́ли

бе́жа́ть „ бе́жа́л*ъ* бе́жа́ла бе́жа́ло — бе́жа́ли

е́хать „ е́хал*ъ* е́хала е́хало — е́хали

быть „ был*ъ* была́ бы́ло — бы́ли

моло́ть „ моло́л*ъ* моло́ла моло́ло — моло́ли

§ 91. The Future.

The future in form is exactly the same as the present, and has no special endings of its own. It is a peculiarity of Russian that the present tenses of all the so-called perfective verbs have future meaning. This will be explained amply in §§ 101, 104.

The future can also be formed by using the form бу́ду, бу́дешь = *I shall be, thou wilt be*, &c. (of the verb быть = *to be*), together with the infinitive of any of the so-called imperfective verbs. The difference in meaning between these two forms of the future will be explained in § 104.

§ 92. The Conditional.

This is formed by adding the particle бы (often contracted to бъ) to the past of any verb.

This particle is really a part of the verb быть = *to be*, which originally possessed a complete conditional tense, long since quite obsolete. This particle бы can be placed before or after the verb, the only rule being that as it is an enclitic it cannot begin a sentence, and therefore if placed before the verb the personal pronoun which is otherwise often omitted must be used. In meaning the conditional can be either past or future, according to the context.

Example:

хоте́лъ-бы = *I should have liked* or *I should like* (inf. хоте́ть = *to wish*).

The particle can either follow the verb thus:

	Sing.	*Plur.*
M.	хоте́лъ-бы	хоте́ли-бы
F.	хоте́ла-бы	
N.	хоте́ло-бы	

all of which forms can of course be preceded by the requisite personal pronouns; or it can precede it, in which case the personal pronouns are essential:

	Sing.	*Plur.*
M.	я бы хоте́лъ	мы бы хоте́ли
	ты бы хоте́лъ	вы
	онъ бы хоте́лъ	они́

	Sing.	*Plur.*
F.	я бы хотéла ты бы хотéла онá бы хотéла	мы вы онéбы хотéли
N.	онó бы хотéло	онú бы хотéли

§ 93. The Imperative.

The endings of the imperative are:

2nd sing.	-и,	-ь
2nd plur.	-ите,	-ьте

The endings -и, -ите are added to the present stems of all those verbs in class I which end in a consonant and have the accent on the ending of the 1st sing. of the present, e.g.

Pres.	*Imper.*	
идý	идú! идúте!	= *go!*
пишý	пиши́ пишúте	= *write!*
берегý	берегú[1] берегúте	= *watch!*

If the accent is not on the ending of the 1st sing., then -ь, -ьте are added, e.g.

бýду	будь бýдьте	= *be!*
ся́ду	сядь ся́дьте	= *sit down!*
плáчу	плачь плáчьте	= *weep!*

If, however, the present stem ends in two consonants, then, although the accent be on the root, the endings -и, -ите are added,[2] e.g.

крúкну	крúкни крúкните	*shout!*

[1] The very common reflexive берегúсь, берегúтесь = *take care!*

[2] But N.B. сы́плю, сыпь, сы́пьте = *scatter!*
and вне́млю, внемли́, внемли́те = *heed!*

The endings -и, -ите are added to all those present stems which end in a vowel, wherever the accent be, and as a diphthong is formed, the и appears as й, e.g.

дѣ́лай дѣ́лайте	= *do!*	пой по́йте	= *sing!*
крой кро́йте	= *cover!*	дай да́йте	= *give!*
совѣ́туй совѣ́туйте	= *advise!*		

Notice that the imperatives of the five verbs бить, вить, лить, пить, and шить are somewhat different, viz.:

бей бе́йте	= *hit!*	пей пе́йте	= *drink!*

Similarly the verbs of class II take one or the other pair of endings according to where the accent is on the 1st sing. of the present. In the case of these verbs it is important to remember that the stem is to be found in the 2nd sing. of the present, and not always in the 1st, e.g.

спи
спи́те = *sleep!*

сиди́
сиди́те = *sit!* (i.e. *don't get up*)

слышь
слы́шьте = *hear!*

брось
бро́сьте = *throw!* (sc. *give over!*)

The following imperatives are irregular:

from ля́гу ля́жешь, inf. лечь

imper. лягъ
ля́гте = *lie down!*

from ѣмъ ѣшь, inf. ѣсть (кушать is more often used)

imper. ѣшь
ѣшьте = *eat!*

from ѣ́ду ѣ́дешь, inf. ѣ́хать

imper. поѣзжа́й
поѣзжа́йте = *start! go! drive!*

N.B. An anomalous 1st plur. of the imperative is often formed colloquially by adding the ending -те on to the 1st plur. of the present, e. g.

(по)идёмте = *let us go!*
поговори́мте = *let's have a little chat!*

though as a rule the 1st plur. of the present is used alone to express *let us.*

The 3rd sing. and 3rd plur. of the imperative is expressed by using the word пуска́й (= 2nd sing. imperat. from пуска́ть = *to let*) or пусть (= 2nd sing. imperat. from пусти́ть = *to let*), followed by the *perfective* present, e. g.

пуска́й придёть = *let him come*
пуска́й стоя́ть = *let them stand*
пусть ска́жеть = *let him tell.*

For the use of the imperative in conditional clauses cf. § 106.

§ 94. The Infinitive.

The infinitive ends in -ть, -чь, -ти, or -чи, preceded by various vowels and consonants; when the accent rests on the infinitive ending itself (which it does in a small minority of all the Russian verbs) then the ending is -ти (-чи), otherwise it is -ть (-чь).

As examples of all possible varieties of infinitives have been given in § 87, it is unnecessary to repeat them here.

§ 95. The Gerund.

The present gerund is in most cases formed from the third person plural of the present by cutting off the last three letters, viz. -ють, -уть, or -ять and adding -я, e. g.

неся́	= *carrying*	from	несу́ть
чита́я	= *reading*	„	чита́ють
говоря́	= *speaking*	„	говоря́ть
сиди́я	= *sitting*	„	сидя́ть
сто́я	= *standing*	„	стоя́ть
гля́дя	= *looking*	„	гляди́ть.

The following are formed somewhat irregularly:

дава́я	= *giving*	from	даю́ть
-знава́я	= *recognizing*	„	-знаю́ть
-става́я	= *standing*	„	-стаю́ть.

N.B. The present gerund from хоте́ть = *they wish* has acquired the meaning *although* and is almost always used as a conjunction in this sense.

When the 3rd plural of the present ends in -утъ or -атъ preceded by ж, ч, ш, or щ then the present gerund ends not in -я, but in -а, e.g.

пла́ча = *weeping*	from	пла́чутъ
ища́ = *seeking*	„	и́щутъ
мо́лча = *being silent*[1]	„	молча́тъ
лёжа = *lying down*	„	лежа́тъ

There is another form of the present gerund which is formed by cutting off the last two letters of the 3rd pl. present (-тъ) and adding -чи. This form is very commonly used by the peasants and in popular poetry, but in literature only a few verbs have it; from the verb быть = *to be*, it is, however, the only form of the gerund ever used, viz.:

бу́дучи, from бу́дутъ.

The past gerund is formed from the masc. sing. of the past 'tense' by cutting off -лъ and adding -въ or -вши, e.g.

бывъ	from	былъ
чита́въ or чита́вши	„	чита́лъ
е́вши	„	е́лъ.

Those pasts which lose the -лъ in the masc. sing. add -ши, e.g.

лёгши from лёгъ
нёсши „ нёсъ.

Those pasts in which a final -д, -т of the stem has fallen out before the -лъ in the masc. sing. replace the dental and add -ши, e.g.

ве́дши from вёлъ (inf. вести́).

Notice especially:

ше́дши from шёлъ (inf. итти́).

---

[1] Used abverbially = *in silence*.

§ 96. The Participles.

The present participle active is formed, like the present gerund, from the 3rd plural of the present tense by cutting off the last two letters -ть and adding -щій, -щая, -щее, which word is then declined exactly like хоро́шій, хоро́шая, хоро́шее, q. v.

E. g. from лю́бятъ (inf. люби́ть), pres. part. act. лю́бящій = *loving*

from веду́тъ (inf. вести́), pres. part. веду́щій = *leading* (sc. *to*)

from зна́ютъ (inf. знать), pres. part. зна́ющій = *knowing* (sc. *who knows*).

It must be noticed that the participle, present in form, of the verb бу́ду = *I shall be*, viz. бу́дущій, has imperfective future meaning, and commonly means *next*, or *the next*; the neuter бу́дущее is used substantivally = *the future*.

§ 97. The past participle active is formed, like the past gerund, from the masc. sing. of the past 'tense', by cutting off -лъ and adding -вшій, -вшая, -вшее, which word is then declined exactly like хоро́шій.

E. g. from люби́лъ (inf. люби́ть), past part. люби́вшій, &c. = *having loved*

from ѣлъ (inf. ѣсть), past part. ѣ́вшій, &c. = *having eaten*

from былъ (inf. быть), past part. бывшій which is always used to express *former* or *late* (though, N.B., not *the late*, which is поко́йный). Those pasts which lose the -лъ in the masc. sing. add -шій, -шая, -шее.

E. g. from у́меръ (inf. умере́ть), past part. уме́ршій, &c. = *having died, dead*.

Those parts in which a final -д, -т of the stem has fallen out before the -лъ in the masc. sing. replace the dental and add -шій, &c.

E. g. from вёлъ (inf. вести́), past part. ве́дшій, &c. = *having led*

from шёлъ (inf. итти́), past part. ше́дшій, &c. = *having gone*

from палъ (inf. пасть) there are two forms: па́дшій and па́вшій = *having fallen*.

§ 98. The present participle passive is formed from the 1st plur. of the present tense, the final -мъ of which is turned into -мый, -мая, -мое, the word thus formed being declined like бѣ́лый; e. g. from чита́емъ (inf. чита́ть), pres. part. pass. чита́емый, &c.; from ви́димъ (inf. ви́дѣть), pres. part. pass. ви́димый, &c.; from лю́бимъ (inf. люби́ть), pres. part. pass. люби́мый, &c. (= *favourite*).

A few verbs of class I with stems ending in consonants form the present participle passive irregularly in -омый, &c.

E. g. from несёмъ (inf. нести́), pres. part. pass. несо́мый, &c.
from ведёмъ (inf. вести́), pres. part. pass. веду́мый, &c.
from иска́ть = *to seek*, pres. part. pass. иско́мый, &c.

§ 99. **The past participle passive** is formed from the infinitive in two different ways. One is by cutting off the -ть of the infinitive and adding -нъ, -на, -но for the short or predicative and -(н)ный, -(н)ная, -(н)ное for the long or attributive form, which word is then declined like бе́лый.

E. g. from сде́лать = *to make*
past part. pass. сде́ланъ, -на, -но; -ны; сде́ланный, &c.
from потеря́ть = *to lose*
past part. pass. поте́рянъ, -на, -но; -ны; поте́рянный, &c.
from дать = *to give*
past part. pass. данъ, дана́, дано́; даны́; да́нный, &c.
from осмотре́ть = *to inspect*
past part. pass. осмо́трѣнъ, -на, -но; -ны; осмо́трѣнный, &c.

Verbs of Class II with inf. in -ить form the past part. pass. as follows:

from обвини́ть = *to accuse*
past part. pass. обвинёнъ, -на́, -но́; -ны́; обвинённый, &c.
from ужа́лить = *to sting*
past part. pass. ужа́ленъ, -на, -но; -ны; ужа́ленный
from ра́нить = *to wound*
past part. pass. ра́ненъ, -на, -но; -ны; ра́неный
from учи́ть = *to teach*
past part. pass. (short form not used) учёный (= *learned, a savant*).

The past participle passive of those verbs of class II, the 1st person sing. of the present of which is affected by the following palatal vowel (cf. § 87), is formed from the 1st person sing. of the present in the following way:

from заплати́ть = *to pay*
1st sing. pres. заплачу́ (т+ю = чу)
past part. pass. запла́ченный (pronounced запло́ченный)
from сади́ть = *to set, plant*
1st sing. pres. сажу́ (д+ю = жу)
past part. pass. са́женный

from скоси́ть = *to mow*
1st sing. pres. скошу́ (с + ю = шу)
past part. pass. ско́шенный
from купи́ть = *to buy*
1st sing. pres. куплю́
past part. pass. ку́пленный.

Notice especially:
from оби́дѣть = *to offend*
past part. pass. оби́женный, &c.

A few verbs of this class which have presents in -щу form their past participles passive with щ.

E. g. from обрати́ть = *to turn*
past part. pass. обращённый
from просвѣти́ть = *to enlighten*
past part. pass. просвѣщённый
from посѣти́ть = *to visit*
past part. pass. посѣщённый
and from отмсти́ть = *to avenge oneself*
past part. pass. отомщённый.

Many verbs of class I whose stems end in a consonant form their past participles passive from the second person sing., cutting off the ending -ешь and adding -ёнъ, &c., for the predicative, -ённый, &c., for the attributive form.

E. g. from вести́ = *to lead*
2nd sing. pres. ведёшь
past part. pass. ведённый
проче́сть = *to read through*
2nd sing. pres. прочтёшь
past part. pass. прочтённый
стричь = *to shear, cut* (*hair*)
2nd sing. pres. стрижёшь
past part. pass. стри́женный
жечь = *to burn* (trans.)
2nd sing. pres. жжёшь
past part. pass. жжённый
and others.

The other way of forming the past participle passive is by cutting off the -ъ of the infinitive and adding -ъ, -а, -о for the short or predicative, and -ый, -ая, -ое for the long or attributive form. This form is by far the less common of the two.

E. g. from мыть = *to wash*
past part. pass. мы́тый, &c.
from бить = *to hit*
past part. pass. би́тый, &c.
from прокля́сть = *to curse*
past part. pass. прокля́тый, &c.
from гре́ть = *to heat*
past part. pass. гре́тый, &c.
from тере́ть = *to rub*
past part. pass. тёртый, &c.
from запере́ть = *to shut* (e. g. *a building*)
past part. pass. за́пертый, &c.

Other common verbs which form their past participles passive in this way are:

нача́ть = *to begin*	жать = *to reap*
нажи́ть = *to earn*	мять = *to crush*
заня́ть = *to occupy, to borrow*	оде́ть = *to dress*
покры́ть = *to cover*	пе́ть = *to sing*
жать = *to press*	брить = *to shave*

and all verbs in -нуть,

e. g. from протяну́ть = *to stretch forth*
past part. pass. протя́нутый, &c.

§ 100. The Reflexive Verb.

This is formed by the addition of -ся (or -сь), a reduced form of the reflexive pronoun себя́, to all parts of the verb, as follows:

купа́ться = *to bathe* (imperfective and intransitive).

Present.

я	купа́юсь
ты	купа́ешься
онъ, она́, оно́	купа́ется
мы	купа́емся
вы	купа́етесь
они́, онѣ́	купа́ются

Past.

Sing.	M. купа́лся F. купа́лась N. купа́лось	Plur. купа́лись

Future.

бу́ду купа́ться, &c.

Conditional.	*Imperative.*
купа́лся-бы, &c.	купа́йся купа́йтесь
Present Gerund.	*Past Gerund.*
купа́ясь	купа́вшись
Present Participle.	*Past Participle.*
купа́ющійся, &c.	купа́вшійся, &c.

Ся is added whenever the part of the verb ends in a consonant or in ь or й; сь when it ends in a vowel. Ся is added in the participles throughout, whether preceded by vowel or consonant.

§ 101. The uses of the Verb.

In order to use the verb correctly it is necessary to know not only the way it is conjugated but also what aspects it possesses.

This is where the real difficulty begins. It will have been noticed that, compared with other languages, Russian possesses very few tenses in the grammatical sense of the word; this want is supplied by the aspects.

The aspects are different forms of the same verb; the same verb acquires a different meaning according to its aspect. The aspects are formed by altering the verb itself either by prefixing some preposition or by lengthening or otherwise altering the root itself; the personal endings remain unaltered and each aspect of the verb has a more or less complete set of forms, i.e. present, imperative, infinitive, &c.

There are two main divisions of the aspects of the Russian verb:

1. imperfective
and 2. perfective.

The verbs themselves are called imperfective or perfective according to the aspect in which they are used in any particular case, i.e. a verb is said to be imperfective, or is said to be used in the imperfective aspect, and every verb must necessarily belong

to one or the other division, i.e. must be either imperfective or perfective.

The difference in meaning between these two aspects is that when any one uses an imperfective verb the action described by that verb is in the mind's eye of the speaker INCOMPLETE, or, if in the past, must have been of uncertain duration.

When, on the other hand, any one uses a perfective verb, then the action is either COMPLETE or, if in the future, the speaker must have its completion in his mind's eye.

In English there is of course also variety of aspects, but it is expressed not by altering the verb itself but by the use of auxiliary verbs or adverbs; for instance, *I go*, *I am going*, *I used to go*, *I often go*, *I was going* are imperfective, whereas *I went*, *I am gone*, *I shall go* are perfective.

The majority of simple Russian verbs, i.e. those which are not compounded with any preposition, are imperfective, but from the fact that a given verb is compounded with a preposition it by no means follows that that verb is perfective. Nevertheless it is true that the commonest way of turning an imperfective into a perfective verb is by prefixing to it a preposition.

Now the curious thing is that when a preposition is used merely to make a perfective out of an imperfective verb, that preposition loses its original meaning.

Further, while there is always one preposition in particular which when prefixed to a verb both makes the verb perfective and loses its own original meaning, on the other hand, all the other prepositions when prefixed to the same verb both make it perfective and retain their original meaning, thus altering the meaning of the verb as well.

The difficulty is to know which is the particular preposition in each case which merely makes a given verb perfective, and as it is sometimes one preposition and sometimes another, the only thing for the beginner to do is to make a list of the commonest verbs and learn them by heart, putting down the simple (imperfective) verb and the form of the same verb compounded with that preposition which makes the verb perfective, while allowing the verb to retain its meaning but losing its own.

One of the prepositions most frequently used for transforming an imperfective into a perfective verb is по, which in the process

quite loses its meaning of *along* or *over*, and merely defines the space of time during which the action takes place, e.g.

смотрѣ́ть (imperfective) = *to look*
посмотрѣ́ть (perfective) = *to give a look.*

It has already been indicated that not all simple verbs are imperfective and conversely that not all verbs compounded with prepositions are perfective; these categories of verbs will be examined later.

There follow now paradigms of one or two very common verbs in couples, first the simple (imperfective) and then the compound (perfective) verb. It will be noticed that not both aspects of the same verb have an equally complete paradigm. This, as will be explained, is in the nature of things, and is invariably the case.

First the paradigms are given, then remarks on the use of the various parts of the two aspects:

дѣ́лать
сдѣ́лать[1] } = *to do, to make*

	Imperfective.	*Perfective.*
present	дѣ́лаю	—— (cf. § 102)
past	дѣ́лалъ	сдѣ́лалъ
future	бу́ду дѣ́лать	сдѣ́лаю
conditional	дѣ́лалъ-бы	сдѣ́лалъ-бы
imperative	дѣ́лай	сдѣ́лай
infinitive	дѣ́лать	сдѣ́лать
pres. ger.	дѣ́лая	——
past ger.	дѣ́лавъ	сдѣ́лавъ
pres. part. act.	дѣ́лающій	——
past part. act.	дѣ́лавшій	сдѣ́лавшій
pres. part. pass.	дѣ́лаемый	——
past part. pass.	дѣ́ланный	сдѣ́ланный

[1] = съ + дѣ́лать.

писа́ть
на + „ } = *to write*

	Imperfective.	*Perfective.*
present	пишу́	—— (cf. § 102)
past	писа́лъ	написа́лъ
future	буду писа́ть	напишу́
conditional	писа́лъ-бы	написа́лъ-бы
imperative	пиши́	напиши́
infinitive	писа́ть	написа́ть
pres. ger.	——	——
past ger.	писа́въ	написа́въ
pres. part. act.	пи́шущій	——
past part. act.	писа́вшій	написа́вшій
pres. part. pass.	——	——
past part. pass.	пи́санный	напи́санный

§ 102. **The Present** (imperfective).

Russian possesses only one present, while English has two: я пишу́ = (1) *I write* (sc. *it is my custom or profession to write*) and = (2) *I am writing* (sc. *at this moment*). Both these meanings are of course imperfective; when one says я пишу́ = *I write*, or я пишу́ = *I am writing*, the speaker does not naturally envisage the termination of his activity. An example of the use of the imperfective present:

что вы дѣ́лаете? = *what are you doing?*
я пишу́ письмо́ = *I am writing a letter.*

The imperfective present is frequently used in Russian illogically, instead of the future, as in English; e. g. in telegrams, letters, &c.:

пріѣзжа́ю за́втра = *I am arriving to-morrow* (пріѣзжа́ю is an imperfective present).

The historic present is often used in narration instead of the past.

Use of the Present in subordinate sentences.

The imperfective present is used in all cases where it is used in English; after verbs of *declaring*, *feeling*, &c. The subordinate sentence is always introduced by что, e. g.

я говорю́, что онъ врётъ = *I say that he is lying*

я ду́маю, что онъ лю́битъ её = *I think he loves her*

ты зна́ешь, что я тебя́ люблю́ = *thou knowest that I love thee.*

In this connexion it should be noticed that after the verb ви́дѣть the so-called paratactic construction is very common in Russian; this is especially frequent in narration. By omitting the что it gives the impression of two principal sentences instead of a principal and a subordinate sentence, e. g.

ви́дятъ — лети́тъ къ нимъ пти́ца = *they see a bird flying towards them* (lit. *they see — a bird is flying towards them*).

Russian is much stricter in the correct expression of time, however, and the present is often used in Russian in subordinate sentences where in English we use the past although we mean the present, e. g.

I did not know that this was so = я не зналъ, что э́то такъ (lit. *I did not know that this* [*is*] *so*)

he told me that he was writing a book = онъ сказа́лъ мнѣ, что пи́шетъ кни́гу (lit. = *he told me that he is writing a book*)

she thought he loved her = она ду́мала, что онъ её лю́битъ (lit. *she thought he loves her*)

and in these cases it would be a very bad mistake to use the past in the subordinate clause.

In conditional clauses the imperfective present is used whenever the condition refers to the actual present; the subordinate sentence is introduced by е́сли = *if* (sometimes by е́жели), and the antithesis in the principal sentence is often expressed by the pronoun то used adverbially, e. g.

е́сли вы хоти́те, то скажи́те ему́ = *if you wish, then tell him*

сдѣ́лайте э́то для неё, е́сли вы её лю́бите = *do this for her if you love her.*

When the condition refers to the future the perfective present (= perfective future, q.v.) is usual, though in the cases of some

verbs the imperfective present is used illogically for the future, as in English, e. g.

е́сли мо́жете, то приходи́те за́втра = *if you can, then come to-morrow.*

In concessive clauses the imperfective present is used as in English ; the subordinate sentence is introduced by хоти́ = *although* (sometimes reduced to хоть), не смотря́ на то, что = *in spite of the fact that*, and the antithesis in the principal sentence is expressed by но = *but*, одна́ко = *nevertheless*, всётаки = *all the same*, or by the enclitic -таки = *yet*,

хоти́ всѣ́ говори́ть что это пра́вда, я имъ всётаки не вѣ́рю = *although all say that this is true (the truth), all the same I don't believe them.*

In relative clauses—*whoever*, in sentences where the present is necessary, is expressed by the simple relative, e. g.

кто говори́ть э́то, врётъ = *whoever says this, lies.*

Whoever, *whatever*, and *however* are also expressed by the relative with the negative particle ни, which however does not make the sentence negative,

что онъ ни дѣ́лаетъ, всё ему́ удаётся = *whatever he does, he succeeds in everything*

какъ вы ни стара́етесь, вы не съумѣ́ете э́то сдѣ́лать = *however much you try you will not be able to do this.*

If the relative sentence is negative the ordinary negative particle не is used and not ни,

кто не зна́етъ э́того челове́ка, тотъ не мо́жетъ поня́ть почему́ его́ такъ уважа́ютъ = *whoever does not know this man, cannot understand why people respect him so.*

In causal clauses the imperfective present is very common ; the subordinate clause is introduced by потому́, что = *because* or та́къ какъ = *since* (in letter-writing these are often abbreviated to п. т. ч. and т. к.),

она́ цѣлу́етъ его́ по тому́, что она́ его́ лю́битъ = *she kisses him because she loves him*

та́къ какъ вы не хоти́те сказа́ть мнѣ, я спрошу́ его́ = *since you do not wish to tell me, I'll ask him.*

In consecutive clauses the imperfective present is used as in English ; the subordinate sentence is introduced by что, e. g.

онъ такъ бо́ленъ, что я не могу́ его́ оста́вить = *he is so ill that I cannot leave him.*

In temporal clauses the subordinate sentences are introduced by когда́ = *when* (often answered by тогда́ = *then*), пока́ = *while*, ме́жду тѣмъ какъ, въ то вре́мя какъ = *while*,

когда́ я пишу́, я не люблю́ что́бы со мной говори́ли = *when I write I don't like people to talk to me*

сиди́те со мной пока́ я одѣва́юсь = *sit with me while I am dressing.*

In comparative clauses the subordinate sentence is introduced by какъ = *how* answered by такъ, or такъ и = *thus*

какъ ду́маетъ, такъ и говори́тъ = *as he thinks, thus* (*too*) *he speaks.*

The Present (perfective).

It is one of the greatest peculiarities of the Russian verb that the formal present of every perfective verb has future meaning, so that while every perfective verb has a tense which is present in form, it is in meaning always a definite future (cf. § 104).

§ 103. **The Past** (imperfective).

This is the equivalent of the imperfect, and its use connotes that the action was more or less habitual or that the period of time during which it lasted is in the mind's eye of the speaker indefinite.

я писа́лъ = *I was writing*, or *I used to write.*

Examples of the use of this tense :

что вы дѣ́лали когда́ я вошёлъ въ ко́мнату ? = *what were you doing when I entered the room ?*

я писа́лъ письмо́ = *I was writing a letter*

пре́жде она́ писа́ла мно́го = *formerly she used to write a lot.*

The use of the imperfective past in subordinate sentences is common in temporal, concessive, and comparative clauses, but presents no difficulties.

It is important to remember that in Russian the present is often used in a subordinate sentence where we use the past.

For the use of быва́ло with the perfective present (= perfective future), cf. § 104.

The Past (perfective).

This is the equivalent of the aorist and its use connotes that the action is completed; it can never be used for any action that is habitual, frequentative, or indefinite:

я написа́лъ = *I wrote,* or *I have written,* or *I had written.*

Examples of the use of this tense:

я сдѣ́лалъ э́то наро́чно = *I did this on purpose*

я написа́лъ твоему́ отцу́ письмо́ = *I have written your father a letter*

что вы сдѣ́лали? = *what have you done?*

There is one curious use of the perfective past which, owing to its prevalence and peculiarity, deserves special mention. The perfective past of any verb can be combined with the neuter singular of the past of быть, viz. бы́ло, to convey the meaning that an action was on the point of being completed and was only just prevented; it is the Russian way of saying *was on the point of, was just about to . . .*, e.g.

онъ на́чалъ было приподнима́ться на посте́ли чтобъ встать . . . = *he was on the point of beginning to raise himself on the bed, in order to get up* (when some one addressed him and he stopped where he was)

не дожида́ясь отвѣ́та онъ пошёлъ было вонъ = *without waiting for an answer he was just going to leave the room* (when he was stopped)

Алёша ста́лъ было отъ лике́ра отка́зываться = *Alesha was about to refuse the liqueur*

я было сказа́лъ ему́, а онъ уже́ пое́халъ = *I was just going to tell him, but he had already gone.*

Although this construction usually implies an unfulfilled intention it is sometimes used when the action was really accomplished, but was interrupted at the very moment of completion.

Another idiomatic construction with much the same meaning is чуть было не with the perfective past, e.g.

онъ чу́ть было не вста́лъ съ посте́ли = *he almost got up from the bed* (sc. *but didn't*)

я чу́ть было не упа́лъ = *I very nearly fell.*

This is in fact the usual way of saying *nearly* followed by a verb, as the adverb *nearly* (почти́) is almost exclusively used with nouns and adjectives.

The use of the Imperfective Past where that of the Perfective Past is to be expected.

This is very common and for the foreigner immensely increases the difficulty of correct expression. It is most frequent in negative sentences; negation of an action seems to the Russian to demand an imperfective verb. E. g.

я не писа́ль ему́ may mean: *I was not writing to him*; but it may also mean, and usually does: *I have not written to him.*

Very common phrases are:

вы мнѣ давно́ не писа́ли = *you haven't written to me for a long time*

я никогда́ не вида́ль его́ (imperfective) = *I have never seen him*

(N.B. In Russian two negatives do *not* make an affirmative)

я не слыха́ла ея́ (imperfective) = *I have not heard her* (sc. *never*).

But where the negation refers to one particular event, the perfective may be used, e.g.

не я э́то сдѣла́ль = *it was not I (who) did this*

я не узна́ль васъ = *I didn't recognize you.*

In interrogative sentences also, where the question covers a long period of time, the imperfective is also frequently used (-ли is the interrogative particle):

писа́ли-ли вы
дѣ́лали-ли вы
вида́ли-ли вы
слыха́ли-ли вы } когда́-нибудь? = *have you ever written, done, seen, heard?*

In general it may be said that in negative and interrogative sentences the imperfective is, in the nature of things, more usual than the perfective aspect.

A most unexpected use of the imperfective past is made in some cases where the action is quite definite and the most obvious aspect to use would seem to be the perfective. These are cases in which the speaker who uses the imperfective instead of the perfective aspect wishes by so doing to give a slightly indefinite tone to what he is saying; by using the imperfective instead of the

perfective he makes a suggestion, as it were, instead of a statement. To the beginner this seems a gross inconsistency, but it is really a very subtle refinement.

For example, one often hears Russians say:

онъ мнѣ писа́лъ объ э́томъ

when one definite letter is referred to and the meaning can only be: *he wrote to me about this*, or *he did write to me*, &c.; in this case the use of the imperfective may connote hostility or incredulity in the mind of the speaker, or it may be merely intentional vagueness.

Another very common instance is:

онъ говори́лъ мнѣ, что . . . = *he told me, that . . .*

where a perfective verb would be natural; in this case there is an English equivalent, for we often say: *he was telling me* when we mean *he told me.*

Here is an example from a letter of L. Tolstoi, where he uses two imperfective pasts while referring to two absolutely definite and instantaneous facts; the only conceivable reason can be that by using the imperfective he makes the item of news conveyed appear less important and thus makes less demand on the interest of his correspondent than if he had proclaimed the fact in the perfective. By using the imperfective he can leave the sentence unfinished without its appearing foolish, while if he had used the perfective his correspondent would have been led to expect some exciting news in the next sentence. This is the passage:

сейча́съ пріѣзжа́лъ ко мнѣ Оболе́нскій и привози́лъ письмо́, то́лько что полу́ченное имъ отъ брата Дмитрія . . .

Obolensky has just come to (see) me and has brought a letter just received by him from (his) brother Demetrius.

The use of the Perfective Past as an Imperative.

In the case of two verbs the perfective past is used as an imperative; these are:

пошёлъ
пошла́
пошло́
пошли́
} fr. inf. пойти́ = *to go (on foot)* and

пое́халъ, &c., fr. inf. пое́хать = *to go* (sc. *in any way except on foot*)

It must be noticed that the verb of course agrees with the object addressed, e. g.

пошла́ соба́ка! = *be gone, be off* (addressing a dog).

The use of the Perfective Past in subordinate sentences.

The perfective past is used in subordinate sentences after verbs of *declaring*, &c., when the event really refers to the past, e. g.

я уже́ сказа́лъ вамъ, что написа́лъ письмо́ = *I have already told you that I have written the letter*

but it is important to remember that whenever the action is still going on, even though the principal sentence is in the perfective past, the verb in the subordinate sentence must be in the present or the future (cf. § 102).

я ему́ сказа́лъ, что не люблю́ его́ = *I told him that I didn't like him.*

In relative, concessive, temporal, comparative, and consecutive clauses the imperfective and perfective past are of course both common, but its use presents no difficulties; the perfective past is common in temporal clauses beginning with *as soon as* (какъ то́лько), *before* (пре́жде чѣмъ, пе́редъ тѣмъ какъ), *after* (по́слѣ того́ какъ), *hardly — when* — (то́лько что — какъ —), *as soon as ever* (чуть), *until* (пока не):

какъ то́лько пріѣ́халъ, я захвора́лъ = *as soon as I arrived, I fell ill*

онъ сдѣ́лалъ э́то пе́редъ тѣмъ, какъ я ему́ написа́лъ = *he did this before I had written to him*

онъ написа́лъ э́то по́слѣ того́, какъ получи́лъ мое письмо́ = *he wrote this after he had received my letter*

то́лько что я пришёлъ, какъ онъ у́меръ = *hardly had I come, when he died*

ты чуть вошёлъ, я вмигъ узна́ла = *thou hadst barely entered, I at once recognized* [*thee*].

§ 104. **The Future** (imperfective).

The imperfective future presents no difficulties; it is a compound tense and is formed by бу́ду (= *I shall be*) and the imperfective infinitive. It is always used when any future action is referred to the completion of which is not envisaged by the speaker.

It must be remembered that it is only the imperfective infinitive which can be used after бу́ду; to use a perfective infinitive after

бу́ду is one of the worst mistakes a foreigner can make. An example of the tense is given in full:

я	бу́ду писа́ть
ты	бу́дешь писа́ть
онъ, она́	бу́детъ писа́ть
мы	бу́демъ писа́ть
вы	бу́дете писа́ть
они́, онѣ́	бу́дутъ писа́ть

= *I am going to write* (sc. indefinitely).

An example of the use of the imperfective future:

что вы бу́дете дѣ́лать по́слѣ за́втрака? = *what are you going to do after lunch* (= *in the afternoon*)?

я бу́ду писа́ть, чита́ть = *I am going to write, read*

вы бу́дете писа́ть мнѣ? = *you will write to me?* (sc. *more than once*)

бу́ду = *I will.*

Ста́ну, ста́нешь, &c. (from стать = *to become, to take up one's stand*), is also used followed by an imperfective infinitive to form this same tense, instead of бу́ду, but it is much commoner in the written than in the spoken language. It is particularly common in negative sentences.

The use of the imperfective future in subordinate sentences does not present any difficulties, but cf. § 102.

The Future (perfective).

This is in form exactly the same as the present, and is in theory the present tense of the perfective aspect, while in fact it always has future meaning. It is used when the completion of any future action is contemplated by the speaker. The use of this tense is at first the most puzzling for the beginner.

Examples:

я напишу́ ему́ тепе́рь = *I shall write to him now*

я сдѣ́лаю э́то за́втра = *I shall do this to-morrow.*

The imperfective present and the perfective future can of course be used together, e. g.

я посмотрю́, что̀ онъ тамъ дѣ́лаетъ = *I shall have a look, what he is doing there*

while

я смотрю́, что́ онъ дѣ́лаетъ = *I am watching, what he is doing.*

There is one use of the perfective future which is very idiomatic and requires special notice. The perfective future of any verb can be combined with the neuter singular of the past of бывáть (the imperfective frequentative form of быть = *to be*), viz. бывáло, to convey the idea of a perfective or definite action which used to take place often or customarily in the past:

зайдёть онá бывáло ко мнѣ чай пить = *she used often to look in on me to have tea* (зайдёть = *she will look in on*, perfective)

онъ бывáло скáжеть мнѣ: 'Принесй стаканъ воды' = *he would often say to me: 'Bring me a glass of water.'*

Бывáло can also be used with the imperfective present to express an imperfective habitual action in the past, but this construction is not so common.

The perfective future is also used in narration like a historic present, e.g.

Татьяна то вздохнётъ, то óхнетъ = *at one moment Tatyana would sigh, at another she would groan.*

It can also be used, illogically, in certain cases where one would expect the imperfective present, e.g.

не разберý ничего, всё вздоръ = *I can't make out a word, it's all nonsense* (lit. *I shall not be able to make out*).

Use of the Future in subordinate clauses.

The future is often used in Russian in subordinate sentences, where in English we use the past or the verb *would*, *should*, e.g. after verbs of *declaring*, &c.:

He said that he would be there, or *that he was going to be there* = онъ сказáлъ, что бýдетъ тамъ (lit. = *he said that he will be there*)

I knew that he would do this, or *that he was going to do this* = я зналъ, что онъ óто сдѣлаетъ (= *I knew that he will do this*)

She did not know that I was going to write = онá не знáла, что я напишý

&c.

In relative clauses the perfective future is used after кто ни = *whoever*, что ни = *whatever*:

что вы ни скáжете, я вамъ не повѣрю = *whatever you may say, I shall not believe you.*

The use of the perfective future is especially common in temporal clauses with the meaning of the future perfect where we in English illogically use the present, e.g.

напиши́те, как̀ъ то́лько прі̀ѣдете = *write as soon as you arrive* (lit. *shall arrive*)

поду́майте хорошѐнько, пе́редъ тѣ̀мъ как̀ъ сдѣ́лаете э́то = *reflect well before you do this* (lit. *will do*)

ска́жемъ вамъ всё по́слѣ того́, как̀ъ вернёмся = *we shall tell you everything after we return* (lit. *shall return*).

N.B. как̀ъ is often used alone with the meaning *when*. *Until* is usually expressed by пока́ не, though не is sometimes omitted, e.g.

я не напишу́, пока́ не получу́ отъ него́ письмо́ = *I shall not write, until I have a letter from him.*

The perfective future is often used in conditional clauses where we use the present illogically:

е́сли онъ сдѣ́лаетъ э́то, я закричу́ = *if he does this* (lit. *will do*) *I shall scream.*

§ 105. **The Conditional** (imperfective and perfective).

The conditional, as already explained in § 92, is not a separate tense in form, but is merely compounded of the past and the particle бы. It can be formed from the imperfective as well as from the perfective past, but it is far more commonly formed from the latter.

The peculiarity of the tense from the syntactical point of view is that it can refer to the future as well as to the past, e.g.

я бы сдѣ́лалъ = *I should have done*, or *I should do*

что вы бы написа́ли? = *what would you have written?* or *what would you write?*

э́то бы́ло-бы невозмо́жно = *that would have been impossible*, or *that would be impossible.*

Other uses of the Conditional.

The conditional is very common in relative sentences beginning with *whoever*, *whatever*, expressed in Russian by the relative pronouns кто что, followed by the бы of the conditional and the negative particle ни:

кто бы э́то ни написа́лъ, я ему́ скажу́ . . = *whoever wrote this, I shall tell him*

что бы вы ни сдѣлали, ничего́ не помо́жетъ = *whatever you do, nothing will help*

что бы э́то ни сто́ило, на́до это сдѣлать = *whatever it cost, we must do this*

что бы ни случи́лось, пойдемъ = *whatever happens, we shall go.*

The conditional is used in unfulfilled conditional sentences, both in the principal and in the subordinate sentences; in the latter it is joined to the word е́сли (= *if*) and is usually reduced to бъ, e.g.

я бы сдѣлалъ э́то, е́слибы могъ = *I should have done this if I had been able*

е́слибъ она́ хотѣ́ла, она бы написа́ла = *if she had wished (to), she would have written.*

But it must be carefully observed that if the condition is still capable of fulfilment either in the present or the past, these tenses are used in Russian and not the conditional, e.g.

е́сли мо́жете, напиши́те тепе́рь = *if you can, write now*

я бу́ду о́чень радъ, е́сли вы сдѣлаете э́то = *I should be very glad if you did this* (lit. = *I shall be very glad if you will do this*).

The conditional is used in final clauses where the subject of the subordinate is not the same as that of the principal sentence; бы is always joined to the conjunction что which introduces the subordinate sentence, e.g.

я пишу́ ему́, что́бы онъ узна́лъ пра́вду = *I am writing to him in order that he may learn the truth*

онъ дѣла́етъ э́то, что́бы мы замѣтили его́ = *he is doing this in order that we may notice him*

она́ помогла́ ему́, что́бы онъ пото́мъ помо́гъ ей = *she helped him in order that he might later help her.*

The conditional is used in concessive clauses if the sense is hypothetical, e.g.

хотя́-бы зналъ, что вы тамъ, я бы не могъ придти́ = *even though I had known you were there I should not have been able to come.*

The conditional is used after all verbs of wishing, commanding, and praying, both affirmative and negative; the subordinate sentences are introduced by чтобы or чтобъ, e.g.

я хочу́, чтобъ онъ э́то сдѣлалъ = *I wish him to do this* (lit. *I wish that he would do this*)

она́ хо́четъ, что́бъ я ей написа́лъ = *she wishes me to write to her* (. . . что́бъ я ей писалъ would mean *to write more than once, often*)

онъ приказа́лъ, что́бы вы пошли́ къ нему́ = *he ordered you to go to him*

она́ проси́ла, что́бы мы э́то сдѣ́лали = *she begged us to do this.*

The conditional is often used after verbs of declaring, feeling, and believing when the verb in the principal sentence is negatived; the subordinate sentence is introduced by что́бы or что́бъ, e.g.

я не говорю́, что́бы э́то было такъ = *I do not say, that this is so*

я не ду́маю, что́бы онъ э́то сдѣ́лалъ = *I do not think that he did it*

я не вѣ́рю, что́бы бы́ло опа́сно = *I don't believe that it is dangerous*

когда́ я пишу́, я не люблю́ что́бы со мной говори́ли = *when I write I don't like people to talk to me.*

In conversation, however, the present and past are often used instead of the conditional, and when the subordinate sentence refers to the future, then the future only is used, e.g.

я не ду́маю, что бу́детъ хо́лодно = *I don't think that it will be cold.*

The conditional, negatived, is often used after verbs of fearing (боя́ться) expressing a positive fear; the subordinate sentence is introduced by что́бы or какъ-бы, e.g.

я боюсь, что́бы вы не простуди́лись = *I am afraid that you will catch cold*

я боюсь, ка́къ-бы онъ не узна́лъ = *I am afraid he will find out*

though что followed by the perfective future can also be used in such cases, and must be if the fear is negative, e.g.

я боюсь, что онъ мнѣ не напи́шетъ = *I am afraid that he will not write me.*

The conditional is also used invariably after certain negative expressions, e.g.

невозмо́жно, что́бы э́то бы́ло пра́вда = *it is impossible that this is true* (lit. *the truth*)

невѣроя́тно, что́бы онъ написа́лъ мнѣ = *it is improbable that he would write me*, or *that he will write.*

The particle бы is sometimes used by itself in certain expressions elliptically, e.g.

вотъ-бы хорошо́! = *there, wouldn't that be nice!*

For the use of бы with the infinitive cf. § 107.

§ 106. The Imperative (imperfective and perfective).

The imperative is used in Russian as in English. The difference between the imperfective and the perfective imperative is that the former implies a command of a more general nature, while the latter refers to the immediate present, e.g.

смотри́, смотри́те! = *look out* (sc. *take care*)!
посмотри́, посмотри́те! = *look here!*
слу́шайте меня́! (inf. слу́шать) = *listen to me* (sc. *take my advice*)!
послу́шайте! (inf. послу́шать) = *listen!*

Very often the imperfective imperative is used when it is a question of polite request rather than of a peremptory command; this is especially so in the case of the verb *to give*, inf. дава́ть (imperfective), and дать (perfective), e.g.

дава́йте мнѣ что́-нибудь пое́сть! = *give me something to eat*

more polite than

да́йте, though the latter is often used.

The same holds good of the verb *to hand, to serve*, inf. подава́ть (imperfective), пода́ть (perfective), e.g.

подава́й(те) обе́дъ! = *serve the dinner!*

is more polite than

пода́й(те) мнѣ счётъ! = *give* (lit. *hand*) *me the bill!*

The imperatives of the verb *to allow, to let*, inf. пуска́ть (imperfective), пусти́ть (perfective), followed by the 3rd sing. of the perfective future, are used to express the 3rd sing. of the imperative (cf. § 93), e.g.

пусть or пуска́й ска́жетъ вамъ = *let him tell you*
пуска́й сдѣлаетъ = *let him do it*
пусть напи́шетъ = *let him write.*

The imperative дава́й(те) is very commonly used colloquially with the meaning *let's*, e.g.

дава́й(те) игра́ть въ ка́рты! = *let's have a game of cards!*

to which the answer usually is:

дава́й(те) = [*yes*] *let's!*

The imperative да́й(те) is often used with the meaning *let*, e.g.

да́й(те) мнѣ говори́ть! = *let me speak.*

In prohibitions the imperfective is used, e.g.

не дава́йте ей говори́ть! = *don't let her speak.*

In negative commands the imperfective imperative is almost invariably used, even when the prohibition only covers a definite act or period of time, e.g.

не пиши́те ему́! = *don't write to him!* (= either *now*, or *in future*)
не смотри́те! = *don't look!*
не говори́те ему́! = *don't tell him!*
не говори́те! = *don't talk about it!*

(for the use of the infinitive in commands cf. § 107).

An exception is the verb

to forget, inf. забыва́ть (imperfective), забы́ть (perfective)

of both of which the imperative is quite common, e.g.

не забыва́йте меня́! = *don't forget me*

but не забу́дьте что я вамъ сказа́лъ! = *don't forget what I told you!*
не забу́дьте! = *don't forget!*
не забу́дьте написа́ть мнѣ! = *don't forget to write to me!*

(cf. незабу́дка = *forget-me-not*).

Use of the Imperative in conditional sentences.

The imperative is frequently used in Russian in unfulfilled conditional sentences; in this construction the imperative can be combined with any noun or pronoun, e.g.

будь э́тотъ домъ дешёвле, я бы купи́лъ его́ = *if this house had been cheaper, I should have bought it* (lit. = *be this house cheaper*).

In this construction the perfective imperative is always used in spite of the negative:

не случи́сь тамъ ло́дка, я бы утону́лъ = *if a boat hadn't happened* [*to be*] *there, I should have been drowned*

не сдѣ́лай онъ э́того, она́ бы пришла́ = *if he had not done this, she would have come*

скажи́ я сло́во, онъ бы и написа́лъ = *if I had said the word, he would have written*

чужо́го не жела́й—своего́ не теря́й = *if you don't covet other people's goods, you won't lose your own.*

There is a very idiomatic use of the imperative which is especially common in narration and deserves mention. This is a combination of the imperative of the perfective verb взя́ться = *to appear* (lit. *to take oneself*), viz. возьми́сь with the words отку́да ни = *whencesoever*, e. g.

вдру́гъ, отку́да ни возьми́сь, за́яцъ! = *suddenly, as if from nowhere, there appeared a hare!*

Notice also the following idiomatic uses of the imperative:

того́ и смотри́, что онъ упадётъ! = *I am afraid that* (sc. *at any moment* or *before we know where we are*) *he will fall* (lit. = *look out!*)

помина́й какъ зва́ли! = *you'll never see* [*him*] *again* (lit. = *remember how they called him*, sc. *his name*)

кажи́сь (instead of ка́жется) = *it seems, one would think.*

Another idiomatic use of the imperative is with the conjunction хоть, when it acquires the meaning *you may as well . . .*

е́сли вы не помо́жете въ на́шей про́сьбѣ, то ужъ не зна́емъ, какъ и быть: про́сто хоть въ пе́тлю полѣза́й! = *if you don't help us in our request, we simply shan't know what to do: we may as well go and hang ourselves!* (lit. *climb into the noose*)

ничего́ нельзя́ съ э́тимъ сдѣ́лать, хоть брось = *nothing can be done with this, you may as well fling it away.*

Sometimes хоть = *even though* (= хотя́) in this same construction:

хоть убей, не скажу́ = *even though you kill me, I shall not tell.*

§ 107. **The Infinitive** (imperfective and perfective).

The difference in meaning between the two aspects of the infinitive has already been explained; it remains to give some examples of the various uses of the infinitive.

In expressions of a general character the imperfective infinitive is always used, e. g.

писáть книги непріятно = *to write books is unpleasant*

while if a single event is referred to the perfective is of course necessary, e. g.

скóлько у негó дéнегъ? трýдно сказáть = *how much money has he? it is difficult to tell.*

The following idiomatic use of the infinitive should be noticed:

нéчего дѣлать = *there is nothing to be done*

онъ пьётъ отъ нéчего дѣлать = *he drinks because he has nothing to do* (lit. *from doing nothing*)

говорúть нéчего (or нéчего п говорúть)! = *there's nothing more to be said!* (sc. *that goes without saying*)

(cf. § 51)

ужъ такъ и быть = *such is fate*, or *very well then, let's make the best of it!*

стáло-быть = *consequently* . . . or *in that case, I suppose* . . .

After verbs of *beginning, continuing, ceasing, finishing*, &c., the imperfective is used, e. g.

ужé нáчали игрáть = *they have already begun to play*

онъ продолжáлъ читáть = *he continued to read*

онú перестáли говорúть = *they ceased talking*

я кóнчилъ писáть = *I have finished writing*

and of course all the more when these verbs are negatived.

After the verb *to know how to*, inf. умѣть (imperfective), съумѣть (perfective), the imperfective and perfective infinitives respectively are used, e. g.

онъ умѣетъ дѣлать фóкусы = *he knows how to do tricks*

съумѣете-ли вы э́то сдѣлать? = *will you know how to do this?*

After the verb *to have time to*, inf. успѣва́ть (imperfective), успѣ́ть (perfective), the perfective is naturally always used, e.g.

я ка́ждый день успѣва́ю написа́ть пять пи́семъ = *every day I manage to write five letters*

успѣ́ете-ли вы э́то сдѣ́лать сего́дня? = *shall you have time to do this to-day?*

After the verb *to be able*, inf. мочь (imperfective),[1] both aspects are used, according to the sense, e.g.

мо́жете-ли вы э́то сдѣ́лать? = *can you do this?*

я не могу́ говори́ть (imperfective) = *I can't speak* (sc. *am physically unable*)

я не могу́ сказа́ть (perfective) = *I can't say*

я не могъ писа́ть = *I could not write* (sc. *was physically unable*)

я не могъ написа́ть = *I could not write* (sc. *just then, that once*), or *I have been unable to write* (sc. *till now*)

The perfective future of this verb is supplied as a rule by the perfective verb:

съумѣ́ть = *to know how to*,

but this again is not used where it is a question of surmounting physical difficulties. In this case the Russians as often as not use the imperfective present могу́, &c., illogically with future meaning, just as we do in English, e.g.

я могу́ придти́ за́втра = *I can come to-morrow* (sc. *shall be able to*).

The imperfective future of мочь is not used; its place is taken by the phrase

бу́ду въ состоя́ніи + inf. = *I shall be in a position to . . .*

After the verb *to wish*, inf. хотѣ́ть (imperfective), either aspect can be used, e.g.

я хочу́ писа́ть = *I wish to write* (sc. *be an author*)

я хочу́ написа́ть письмо́ = *I wish to write a letter*

я не хочу́ говори́ть (imperfective) = *I don't want to talk*

я не хочу́ сказа́ть (perfective) = *I don't want to say*

я хотѣ́лъ говори́ть = *I wanted to speak*

я хотѣ́лъ сказа́ть = *I meant to say.*

---

[1] N.B. The perfective aspect of мочь is смочь, pres. смогу́ = *I shall be able*, but this is very seldom used; whenever it is, it implies the surmounting of great physical difficulty.

After verbs such as люби́ть = *to like*, предпочита́ть = *to prefer*, не люби́ть = *to dislike*, the imperfective infinitive is of course the more usual.

After verbs of *refusing, agreeing*, &c., either aspect can be used, though the perfective is the commoner.

Use of the Infinitive instead of the Future.

This is common in such phrases as:

что́-же дѣла́ть? = *what are we to do?* (*what is to be done?*)
написа́ть-ли ему́? = *shall I write to him?*
что написа́ть? = *what shall I write?*
пойти́ и сказа́ть ему́ = *I shall go and tell him* (or *let us . . .*)
какъ намъ быть? = *how are we to manage?*
зачѣмъ прода́ть? = *why are you* (or *we*) *going to sell?* (= *why sell?*)
сказа́ть вамъ = *shall I tell you?*
какъ вамъ сказа́ть = (lit. = *how shall I tell you?*) *how shall I put it?*

Use of the Infinitive with the conditional particle.

This occurs in such phrases as:

посмотре́ть-бы? = *shall we have a look?*

Often it is merely the verb было that has been omitted, e.g.

хорошо́-бы пое́хать = *it would be nice to go*
попро́бовать-бы? = *shall we have a try* (or *a taste*)?

Use of the Infinitive instead of the Imperative.

This is especially common in public notices, e.g.

е́хать ша́гомъ! (imperfective) = *drive at walking speed!* (cf. *aller au pas!*)
никого́ не пуска́ть! (imperfective) = *don't let any one go!*
наплева́ть! = *spit!* (sc. *take no notice of it!*)

The infinitive плева́ть can even be used in place of a finite verb, e.g.

я плева́ть на твоего́ хозя́ина! = *I don't care in the least about your master!*

Use of the Infinitive in subordinate sentences.

In final clauses the infinitive is used when the subject of the subordinate is the same as that of the principal sentence (cf. § 105), e. g.

я пишу́ ему́, что́бы узна́ть пра́вду = *I am writing to him in order to find out the truth*

онъ дѣ́лаетъ э́то, что́бы помо́чь мнѣ = *he is doing this in order to help me.*

In conditional clauses the infinitive is very common, e. g.

е́сли ему́ написа́ть, онъ сдѣ́лаетъ сей-ча́съ = *if we write to him, he will do it at once*

е́сли вамъ сказа́ть, вы не пове́рите = *if I tell you, you won't believe* [*me*].

Sometimes the е́сли is omitted, and the infinitive used in the principal as well as in the subordinate sentence, e. g.

много жела́ть — добра́ не вида́ть = *if you wish for much, you'll see no good*

пойти́ — такъ пойти́! = *if we are going, then let's go!*

A very curious idiomatic use of the infinitive is mentioned here, as it is at first extremely puzzling to the foreigner; it is often, though not always, in the form of an answer to a question, and consists of the infinitive followed by the past or present of the same verb, while in meaning it always implies dissatisfaction or the non-fulfilment of a possibility, e. g.

Question:

слыха́ли-ли вы про э́то? = *have you heard about this?*

Answer:

слыха́ть-то слыха́лъ, но не вѣ́рю = *oh yes, I* have *heard, but I don't believe it.*

Question:

вида́ли-ли вы царя́? = *have you seen the tsar?*

Answer:

вида́ть-то вида́лъ! = *oh yes, I've seen him* (sc. *but never spoken to him*)

говори́ть-то она́ говори́тъ, а ничего́ не дѣ́лаетъ = *she* talks *a lot, but does nothing*

умѣ́ть-то я умѣ́ю, но я не хочу́ = *I* know *how to* [*do it*], *but I don't want to.*

§ 108. **The Gerund** (imperfective and perfective).

The gerund is used in Russian as in other languages to avoid the complication of an explanatory (usually subordinate) sentence.

The present gerund is naturally formed only from imperfective verbs; the past gerund from both imperfective and perfective. Whenever a gerund from a perfective verb does have the ending of the present gerund, viz. -я, it has perfective (past) meaning, e.g. from

inf. увидѣть = *to perceive*

past perfective gerund

увидѣвши } = *having perceived.*
and увидя }

Examples of the use of the Gerunds.

бу́дучи въ го́родѣ, мы зашли́ къ вамъ = *being in the town, we looked you up*

прочита́въ письмо́, онъ пое́халъ = *having read the letter, he departed*

говори́въ три часа́, онъ сѣлъ на своё мѣ́сто = *having spoken for three hours, he sat down in his place.*

Some gerunds are very commonly used to express attitude, e.g.

писа́ть лёжа = *to write while lying down*
пѣть си́дя = *to sing sitting*
говори́ть сто́я = *to speak standing up.*

The following idioms should be noticed:

мо́лча = *in silence*

ма́ло погоди́ } = *after a little* (lit. = *having waited a little*)
or немно́го погоди́ }

не́хотя = *unwillingly.*

Some gerunds have quite lost their original meaning and are used as adverbs or conjunctions:

from хотѣ́ть = *to wish*
хотя́ = *although*
(N.B. *willingly* is охо́тно)

from зрѣть = *to look*
зря = *at random, without reflection, to no purpose*

from смотрѣ́ть = *to look*
несмотря́ на + acc. = *in spite of*
смотря́ = *all according*
e. g. смотря́ какъ = *that's just as it may happen*
смотря́ по како́й цѣнѣ́ . . . = *according to the price at which . . .*

and from умѣ́ть = *to know how to*, the popular form умѣ́ючи = *having the knowledge*, e. g.

э́то на́до сдѣ́лать умѣ́ючи = *you must have the knack to do this.*

§ 109. **The Participles** (imperfective and perfective).

The participles are little used in conversation but are very common in literature.

There are naturally no present participles formed from perfective verbs. Past participles active are formed from almost all verbs of both aspects ; past participles passive are formed from all perfective (transitive) verbs and from a considerable number of imperfective (transitive) verbs.

As regards the use of the participles it may be mentioned that some of them are used as nouns, e. g.

для куря́щихъ = *for smokers*
для не́курящихъ = *for non-smokers*
бу́дущее = *the future*
въ бу́дущемъ = *in the future*
подлежа́щее = *the subject* (gram.)
сказу́емое = *the predicate* ,,
насѣко́мое = *insect*

while in general it may be said that the present participles both active and passive are far more commonly used as pure adjectives without being considered as participles at all, e. g.

слѣ́дующій = *following* is always used for *the next*
въ слѣ́дующемъ году́ = *next year*
свѣ́дущій = *knowing, learned*
онъ о́чень свѣ́дущъ по + dat. = *he is very learned in . . .*
настоя́щій = (1) *present* (of time), = (2) *real*
бу́дущій = *future*
люби́мый = *favourite*
зави́симый = *dependent*
незави́симый = *independent.*

Notice the idiom:

повúдимому = *apparently.*

Present participles passive beginning with не- correspond to our e.g. *in — able*

e.g. неумоли́мый = *inexorable*
неоцѣни́мый = *invaluable.*

From several verbs two forms of participle are in use, the regular present participle in -щій (which is phonetically not Russian but Old Bulgarian) and the purely adjectival form in -чій (which is the original Russian form of the present participle);

e.g. from горѣть = *to burn* (intrans.)
горя́щій = *burning*
горя́чій = *hot* (esp. of *water, food,* &c.).

Notice the following present participles which are very common in letter-writing:

многоуважа́емый (or -ая) . . .
глубоко———— (or -ая) . . . = *much* or *deeply respected*
уважа́ющій (or -ая) Васъ
глубоко———— (or -ая) Васъ = (*deeply*) *respecting you*
лю́бящій (or -ая) Васъ = *your loving.*

The past participle active, too, is but rarely used as a participle. One or two forms are very commonly used as adjectives or nouns, e.g.

бы́вшій = *former*
прошéдшій = *past*[1] (esp. in grammar).

Notice

сумасшéдшій = *madman*

from сойти́ съ ума́ = *to leave one's mind.*

The past participle passive is by far the most commonly used of all the participles, and even is not rare in conversation. This participle also often takes the place of the passive, e.g.

кѣмъ э́та кни́га была́ переведена́? = *by whom was this book translated?*

---

[1] Though the forms

про́шлый = *last*
про́шлое = *the past*

newly-formed from the perfective past прошёлъ are far commoner.

кѣмъ э́та пьéса напи́сана? = *by whom is this play written?*

она одѣ́та въ чёрномъ = *she is dressed in black.*

In this case also many participles are almost entirely used as adjectives, e.g.

прокля́тый = *accursed*

вышеупомя́нутый = *above-mentioned.*

Notice the idioms:

за́нято = *occupied* (of places in train, &c.)

за́перто = *shut* (of buildings)

битко́мъ наби́то = *chock-full.*

§ 110. The Reflexive Verb and the expression of the Passive.

The reflexive verb can sometimes be used, as well as the passive participles, to express the passive, but as a matter of fact phrases which in other languages are in the passive are in Russian very often expressed in the active, e.g.

he is very much liked would be always translated его́ о́чень лю́бять

he is hated = его́ о́чень не лю́бять

this is not done = э́того не дѣ́лають

though the phrase э́то не дѣ́лается is also common

this paper is little read = э́ту газе́ту ма́ло чита́ють or э́та газе́та ма́ло чита́ется.

As a matter of fact, reflexive verbs in Russian are often merely the intransitive forms of otherwise transitive verbs, e.g.

мыть	= *to wash* (trans.)
мыться	= *to wash* (intrans.)
купа́ть	= *to bathe* (trans.)
купа́ться	= *to bathe* (intrans.)
продолжа́ть	= *to continue* (trans.)
продолжа́ться	= *to continue* (intrans.)
роди́ться	= *to be born*
(роди́ть	= *to bear child*)

but N.B.

онъ продолжа́етъ писа́ть = *he continues to write.*

Some transitive verbs when used intransitively require the complete reflexive pronoun instead of the abbreviated form -ся, e.g.

чу́вствовать = *to feel* (trans.)
чу́вствовать себя́ = *to feel* (intrans.)
я себя́ чу́вствую нехорошо́ = *I don't feel well*
как вы себя́ чу́вствуете ? = *how do you feel ?*

Many reflexive verbs which are intransitive have no corresponding transitive form, e.g.

сморка́ться = *to blow one's nose*	призна́ться = *to confess*
улыба́ться = *to smile*	каза́ться = *to seem*
смея́ться = *to laugh*	остава́ться = *to remain*
становиться = *to become*	случа́ться = *to happen.*
наде́яться = *to hope*	простуди́ться = *to take cold*

боя́ться = *to fear* is both transitive and intransitive.

The verbs

нрави́ться = *to please*	любова́ться = *to admire*
каса́ться = *to touch, concern*	наслажда́ться = *to enjoy*

are looked upon as intransitive, and take the first the dative, the second the genitive, and the last two the instrumental.

A few reflexive verbs are only used impersonally :

смерка́ется = *it is growing dark*
мне́ хо́чется = *I want to . . .*
мне́ нездоро́вится = *I don't feel well*
мне́ не спи́тся = *I can't get to sleep, I don't sleep well*
мне́ сни́тся = *I see in my dream, (he) appears to me in my dream*
мне́ че́шется = *I itch*
разуме́ется = *it is understood, of course.*

Notice the curious use of the impersonal verb :

прихо́дится (lit. = *it comes itself*)

1. = *one has to*
   прихо́дится игра́ть = *one has to play*
   (мне́) пришло́сь заплати́ть = *(I) had to pay*
   что придётся нам сде́лать ? = *what shall we have to do ?*
2. = *stands in relation to* (*me*) + inst.
   она́ прихо́дится мне́ двою́родной сестро́й = *she stands in the relationship of first cousin to me = she is my first cousin.*

§ 111. Impersonal Verbs.

Besides the impersonal reflexive verbs already mentioned, a few others, the use of some of which is peculiar, may be noticed here. Some do not call for comment, e. g.

боли́тъ = *it hurts*
у меня́ голова́ боли́тъ = *my head aches*
,, зубъ ,, = *my tooth* ,, (this can of course also be used in the plural)
подмора́живаетъ = *it is beginning to freeze.*

It is freezing is usually expressed merely by the noun моро́зъ = *frost* (sc. *there is a frost*), e. g.

сего́дня моро́зъ = *it is freezing to-day*

similarly сего́дня о́ттепель = *it is thawing.*

It is raining can only be expressed by:

дождь идётъ (= *rain is going*)
дождь льётъ = *it is pouring*
cf. снѣгъ идётъ = *it is snowing*
градъ идётъ = *it hails*
мо́лнія сверка́етъ = *the lightning is flashing*
громъ греми́тъ = *the thunder is thundering.*

These phrases are expressed in the past and the future as follows:

вчера́ шёлъ дождь = *yesterday it rained*
но́чію вы́палъ снѣгъ = *there has been a fall of snow in the night*
пошёлъ дождь = *it has started raining*
вчера́ былъ си́льный моро́зъ = *yesterday there was a hard frost*
бу́детъ дождя́ = *it is going to rain* (*there will be of rain*)
не бу́детъ дождя́ = *it is not going to rain*
переста́лъ дождь = *the rain has stopped.*

The impersonal verb can also be used, e. g.

вы́пало мно́го снѣгу (gen.) = *much snow has fallen* (*it has fallen out much of snow*)
замело́ or занесло́ доро́гу снѣгомъ = *the road has got covered with snow.*

To smell (intrans.) is expressed as follows:

па́хнетъ хорошо́ = *it smells nice*
па́хнетъ ро́зами = *it smells of roses*

and by a curious impersonal use of the verb нести́ = *to carry*

отъ него́ несётъ духа́ми = *he smells of scent* (lit. = *it carries with scents from him*).

To suffice:

хвата́етъ (imperfective) = *it suffices*
хва́титъ (perfective) = *it will suffice*
недостаётъ = *it wants*

e.g. недостаётъ мнѣ его́ = *I miss him.*

Notice the following:

достáточно / довóльно } = *that is enough*

мóжно = *one may*
мóжно сказáть = *one may say*
мóжно говори́ть = *talking is allowed*
мóжно? = *may one?*
нельзя́ = *one may not, it is impossible*
нельзя́ сказáть = *one can't say*

but N.B. непзвѣ́стно = *one can't tell* (sc. *know*)
извѣ́стно, что . . . = *it is well known that*

возмóжно / мóжетъ быть } = *it is possible*

возмóжно, что откáжется = *it is possible that he will refuse*
мóжетъ быть онъ знáетъ = *perhaps he knows*

the latter phrase is very commonly transposed: быть мóжетъ

невозмóжно = *it is impossible*
невозмóжно, чтóбы онъ не зналъ = *it is impossible that he does not know*
должнó быть = lit. *it must be*, but comes to mean *it is probable, I expect*
должнó быть, онъ знáетъ = *I expect he knows*
стáло быть = lit. *it has become* (or *begun*) *to be*, but comes to mean *consequently, I suppose*
стáло быть, вы его́ не лю́бите? = *then I suppose* (*I must conclude that*) *you don't love him?*
стáло быть — такъ! = *I suppose it is so*
не стáло + gen. = *there is no more of*
у него́ не стáло дéнегъ = *his money came to an end*
нáдо = *it is necessary*

мнѣ на́до э́то сдѣлать сего́дня = *I must do this to-day*
не на́до = *one must* or *need not, don't*
не на́до написа́ть сего́дня = *it is not necessary to write (the letter) to-day*
сказа́ть вамъ ? = *shall I tell you ?*
нѣтъ, не на́до = *no, don't*
ну́жно = *it is necessary*
не ну́жно = не на́до
слѣ́дуетъ = *it is proper, ought* (lit. = *follows*)
не слѣ́дуетъ = *it is not correct*
вамъ слѣ́довало-бы . . . = *you ought to . . .*

Notice the impersonal use of the verb *to begin*:

начина́етъ темнѣть = *it is beginning to grow dark*

but когда́ начина́ется конце́ртъ ? = *when does the concert begin ?*

Other common impersonal expressions are:

предстои́тъ мнѣ + inf. = *I have got to . . .*
предостаётся мнѣ + inf. = *it remains for me to . . .*
состои́тъ (изъ or въ) = *it consists (of)*
состои́тся = *it will take place.*

§ 112. How to express the verb *to be.*

The present tense of the verb быть = *to be* has long since become obsolete; it is either omitted absolutely or its place is taken, in writing by a long hyphen, in speaking by a pause, e.g.

я англича́нинъ = *I am an Englishman*
э́то — мой сынъ = *this is my son*

whether the pause is made or not entirely depends on how much emphasis the speaker wishes to put in the subject of the sentence.

Notice the fact that the phrases *this is, that is, there are, those are*, are usually expressed by э́то irrespective of the number and gender of the predicate, e.g.

э́то моя́ жена́ = *this is my wife*
э́то мои́ дѣти = *these are my children*

unless of course special emphasis is laid on the pronoun, e.g.

тѣ кни́ги его́, а э́ти — мои́ = *those books are his, but these are mine.*

Here is, here are are often expressed by вотъ, e.g.

вотъ мой домъ = *here is my house,*

вотъ can also mean *over there is*; if very remote distance is pointed to вонъ тамъ can be used.

The 3rd sing. of the present is still very commonly used in certain cases, e.g.

то́ есть = *that is (to say)*

т. е. = *i. e.*

Combined with у and a pronoun it is the commonest way of saying *have*, e.g.

у меня́ есть = *I have*

у него́ есть = *he has*

though as often as not in these cases the verb есть is omitted.

In shops, restaurants, &c., when asking a question, есть must be used, e.g.

Question:

есть у васъ икры́? (genitive) = *have you any caviare?*

Answer:

есть = *we have,*

the negative answer is always

нѣтъ or нѣту = *we have not.*

Нѣтъ is really a contraction of не есть, and has come to be the ordinary word for *no*; it also means *there is not* and thus *have not*, e.g.

у меня́ нѣтъ = *I have not*

у меня́ нѣтъ отца́ = *I have no father.*

To есть is sometimes added the interrogative particle -ли, though есть by itself, if the voice is inflected accordingly, is quite sufficient to indicate the question.

Есть-ли is apt to sound like е́сли (= *if*), and е́сли is in fact a corruption of есть-ли.

Нѣть-ли у васъ? is also a very common way of saying *have you got?*

Найдётся-ли у васъ? from найти́ (= *to find*) is also much used to express the same thing.

Есть is also used for *there is, there are* in such cases as:

есть такіе лю́ди, которы́е не лю́бятъ икры́ = *there are such people, who don't like caviare*

есть мно́гія ве́щи, о кото́рыхъ я бы хоте́лъ съ ва́ми поговори́ть = *there are many things about which I should like to talk to you*

въ э́той кни́гѣ есть мно́го хоро́шаго = *in this book there is much that is good.*

The 3rd sing. есть and the 3rd pl. суть are also used in emphatic declarations or definitions; it should be noted, however, that суть is very little used, and that есть can be used for any of the three persons singular or plural, e.g.

Турге́невъ люби́лъ ру́сскихъ какъ они́ есть = *Turgenev loved the Russians as they are*

жизнь есть трудъ для бу́дущаго поколѣ́нія = *life is labour for the next generation.*

Owing to the fact that есть is so seldom used, single adverbs acquire the meaning of whole sentences, e.g.

хо́лодно	= *it is cold*
тепло́	= *it is warm*
жа́рко	= *it is hot*
мо́жно	= *it is possible*
на́до	= *it is necessary*
мнѣ хо́лодно	= *I am cold,* &c.

The 3rd sing. of the present of быва́ть, the imperfective frequentative of быть, is often used:

э́то ча́сто быва́етъ = *that often happens*

э́то никогда́ не быва́етъ = *that never happens*

онъ у насъ быва́етъ = *he sometimes comes to see us.*

The past tense of быть does not call for special mention. It is often used to express the idea of visits, e.g.

я былъ у нихъ вчера́ = *I went to see them yesterday.*

The neuter is often used impersonally:

тамъ бы́ло двадцать челове́къ = *there were twenty people there.*

(For other uses of бы́ло and бывало cf. §§ 103, 104.)

The future бу́ду presents no difficulties. Notice the idiom:

бу́детъ! = *enough!*

(For uses of the future, conditional, imperative, and infinitive of быть cf. §§ 104–107.)

§ 113. Various forms of Imperfective and Perfective Verbs.

It has already been remarked that most perfective verbs are formed from imperfective verbs by prefixing a preposition to the latter, and that the preposition used for this purpose loses its meaning. It is impossible to tell which preposition in each particular case is used for the particular purpose of making the imperfective verb perfective, as various prepositions are thus used, e. g.

Imperfective.		*Perfective.*
смотре́ть	*to look*	посмотре́ть
писа́ть	*to write*	написа́ть
де́лать	*to do*	сде́лать
знать	*to know*	узна́ть

and others.

The only thing that can be said is that по is used in an infinitely greater number of cases for this purpose than any other preposition. But it must be remembered that while one preposition merely makes the imperfective verb perfective and loses its own meaning, all the other prepositions when compounded with the same verb *both make the verb perfective and endow it at the same time with their own special meaning.* For instance:

разсмотре́ть = *to examine closely*
приписа́ть = *to ascribe, to add in writing*
переде́лать = *to do over again, to alter.*

These verbs, as has been remarked, are perfective; the imperfective verbs corresponding to them in meaning, i. e. compounded with the same preposition, are the so-called frequentative imperfective verbs, which form a subsidiary category of imperfective verbs. These verbs are frequentative (or iterative) for the most part only in name; the large majority of them are quite ordinary imperfective verbs. Their peculiarity is that even when they are preceded by a preposition they do not, like other verbs, become perfective. They remain imperfective, forming the ordinary imperfective verb corresponding to a perfective verb which has been made perfective by having a preposition added to it and at the same time been altered in meaning by that preposition. These frequentative imperfective verbs are all formed by some alteration of the stem of the verb, either by lengthening it or by

altering the vowel which precedes the infinitive ending. These verbs seldom occur in their simple form, i. e. uncompounded with a preposition, but one or two are quite commonly used, e. g.

бывáть (from быть) = *to be often*
э́то бывáетъ = *that sometimes happens*
я у нихъ бывáю = *I am in the habit of going to see them*
говáривать (from говори́ть) = *to be in the habit of saying*
онъ такъ говáривалъ = *he often used to say so.*

Such verbs are really frequentative in meaning. But in the great majority of cases, i. e. when compounded with prepositions, they are merely ordinary imperfective verbs. They may have frequentative meaning, but this as a rule has to be specially expressed by the addition of some such word as чáсто = *often.* E. g. забывáть is theoretically the frequentative imperfective from забы́ть (perfective) = *to forget*; я забывáю *may* mean *I often* (or *always*) *forget,* but on the other hand it may mean merely *I am forgetting.* Similarly разговáривать = *to converse* is theoretically a frequentative imperfective from говори́ть, but it may mean either *I converse* or *I am conversing.* For this reason it is better not to label these verbs *frequentative* or *iterative,* but to call them what they are in the great majority of cases, viz. *compound imperfective verbs,* in order to differentiate them effectively from the large number of imperfective verbs which are simple and from the perfective verbs the majority of which are compound, while some are simple.

It is now time to examine the various ways in which these compound imperfective verbs are formed.

In a large number of cases they are formed by the insertion of the syllable -ыв- or -ив- between the stem of the verb and the infinitive ending. Compound imperfectives from almost all verbs ending in -ать and from many others besides are formed thus and belong to this category. Verbs of this formation which in their original form contain the vowel о in their stems, usually, but not necessarily, change this to а in the compound imperfective. The verbs are here arranged in series of four, e. g.

1. пытáть = *to try* = simple imperfective.

2. попытáть = *to try* = compound perfective with loss of meaning by preposition.

3. испыта́ть = *to experience* = compound perfective with retention of meaning by preposition.

4. испы́тывать = compound imperfective with retention of meaning by preposition. *It must of course not be imagined that the particular compound perfective, with retention of meaning by the preposition, is in each example here given the only compound perfective formed from that verb.* In the case of some verbs such compounds are very numerous; the examples here given are chosen at random, but they include only verbs that are commonly used:

Imperfective.		*Perfective.*
писа́ть	*to write*	написа́ть
припи́сывать	*to ascribe*	приписа́ть
де́лать	*to do*	сде́лать
переде́лывать	*to alter*	переде́лать
смотре́ть	*to look*	посмотре́ть
рассма́тривать	*to examine*	рассмотре́ть
чита́ть	*to read*	почита́ть
прочи́тывать	*to read through*	прочита́ть проче́сть alternative verbs identical in meaning
иска́ть	*to search*	поиска́ть
взы́скивать	*to exact*	взыска́ть
рабо́тать	*to work*	поработа́ть
зараба́тывать	*to earn*	заработа́ть
слу́шать	*to listen*	послу́шать
подслу́шивать	*to overhear*	подслу́шать
лома́ть	*to break*	слома́ть
прола́мывать	*to break through*	проломи́ть
стро́ить	*to build*	постро́ить
устра́ивать	*to arrange*	устро́ить
смея́ться	*to laugh*	засмея́ться
осме́ивать	*to deride*	осмея́ть
кра́сть	*to steal*	укра́сть
обкра́дывать	*to rob*	обокра́сть
тяну́ть	*to pull*	потяну́ть
стя́гивать	*to tighten, close*	стяну́ть

Those verbs of class III, the 1st sing. of whose present is affected by the personal ending -ю (which changes into -у, cf. §§ 87, 88), are similarly affected in their compound imperfective forms, though no longer belonging to the same class, e.g.

Imperfective.		*Perfective.*
проси́ть	*to request*	попроси́ть
спра́шивать	*to ask (a question)*	спроси́ть
дави́ть	*to squash*	подави́ть
зада́вливать	*to throttle*	задави́ть

From a number of perfective verbs the compound imperfectives are formed by inserting -ва- between the stem and the infinitive ending, e.g.

Imperfective.		*Perfective.*
бить	*to hit*	поби́ть
убива́ть	*to kill*	уби́ть
пѣть	*to sing*	спѣть
запѣва́ть	*to strike up a song*	запѣ́ть
пить	*to drink*	вы́пить
пропива́ть	*to spend on drink*	пропи́ть
крыть	*to cover*	покры́ть
раскрыва́ть	*to uncover, open, discover*	раскры́ть
мыть	*to wash* (trans.)	вы́мыть
умыва́ться	*to wash* (intrans.)	умы́ться

Notice especially the verbs (for other simple perfective verbs cf. § 114):

Imperfective.		*Perfective.*
дава́ть	*to give*	дать
pres. даю́		pres. дамъ
дѣва́ть	*to put*	дѣть
pres. дѣва́ю		pres. дѣ́ну

and быва́ть = *to be often, to happen* (from быть = *to be*).

Some verbs of this category cannot be formed in complete series in this way, e.g.

Imperfective.		*Perfective.*
знать	*to know*	узна́ть
узнава́ть	*to learn (news), to recognize*	

Imperfective.		*Perfective.*
pres. узна́ю узна́ешь		pres. узна́ю узна́ешь
——	*to take one's stand* [1]	стать pres. ста́ну
устава́ть pres. устаю́	*to grow tired*	уста́ть pres. уста́ну

and many other very common compounds

боле́ть	*to be ill*	заболе́ть
commonly used only as impersonal		
боли́т	*it aches*	
заболева́ть	*to fall ill*	

Those verbs which, both in their imperfective and perfective aspects, have no preposition, i.e. do not require a preposition to form their perfective aspect, can of course also be compounded with any preposition in both aspects, the preposition always retaining its meaning, e.g.

Imperfective.		*Perfective.*
дава́ть	*to give*	дать
подава́ть	*to hand, serve*	пода́ть
продава́ть	*to sell*	прода́ть
придава́ть	*to add*	прида́ть
передава́ть	*to hand over*	переда́ть
издава́ть	*to edit, publish*	изда́ть
раздава́ть	*to distribute*	раздать
воздава́ть	*to reward*	возда́ть
выдава́ть	*to deliver*	вы́дать
поддава́ться	*to submit*	подда́ться
сдава́ть	*to deliver*	сдать
создава́ть	*to create*	созда́ть
задава́ть	*to set* (e.g. questions)	зада́ть
додава́ть	*to complete*	дода́ть

(N.B. Many of the compounds here given have other meanings besides those given here, and of course the same applies to other verbs.)

[1] For its other meanings cf. p. 214.

Imperfective.		*Perfective.*
дѣва́ть	*to put*	дѣ́ть
одѣва́ть(ся)	*to dress*	одѣ́ть(ся)
надѣва́ть	*to put on*	надѣ́ть
раздѣва́ть(ся)	*to undress*	раздѣ́ть(ся)
переодѣва́ть(ся)	*to change dress*	переодѣ́ть(ся)
задѣва́ть	*to catch hold of*	задѣ́ть
(-става́ть)	*to take one's stand*	стать
переста́ть	*to cease*	переста́ть
заста́ть	*to find* (sc. *at home*)	заста́ть
доста́ть	*to obtain*	доста́ть
оста́ться	*to remain*	оста́ться
вста́ть	*to get up* (sc. *from bed*)	встать
разста́ться	*to part* (intrans.)	разста́ться

Verbs with infinitives in -чь, -зть, -сти form their compound imperfectives by adding -ать to their stem, e.g.

Imperfective.		*Perfective.*
мочь	*to be able*	смочь
помога́ть	*to help*	помо́чь
влечь	*to drag*	повле́чь
привлека́ть	*to attract*	привле́чь

The verb ѣсть forms its compound imperfective as follows:

Imperfective.		*Perfective.*
ѣсть	*to eat*	пое́сть
съѣда́ть	*to eat up, consume*	съѣсть
надоѣда́ть(intrans.)	*to importune*	надое́сть(intrans.)

The cognate verb *to dine*:

Imperfective.	*Perfective.*
обѣ́дать	пообѣ́дать отобѣ́дать

is from the noun обѣ́дъ = *dinner.*

Verbs of which the stem contains two adjacent consonants insert ы or и between these in the compound imperfective, e.g.

Imperfective.		*Perfective.*
слать [1]	*to send*	посла́ть
pres. шлю		
высыла́ть	*to banish*	вы́слать
жать	*to press*	пожа́ть
pres. жму		
прижима́ть	*to squeeze*	прижа́ть
звать	*to call*	позва́ть
pres. зову́		
называ́ть	*to name*	назва́ть
тере́ть	*to rub*	потере́ть
pres. тру		
обтира́ть	*to wipe*	обтере́ть
жечь	*to burn* (trans.)	сжечь
pres. жгу		
зажига́ть	*to light, kindle*	зажёчь
ждать	*to wait*	
pres. жду	*to await*	
ожида́ть	*to expect*	
поджида́ть	*to wait (for)*	подожда́ть
дожида́ться	*to attain by waiting* / *to await until (arrival)*	дожда́ться

There are several verbs of this kind which are never used except in composition, e.g.

Imperfective.		*Perfective.*
умира́ть	*to die*	умере́ть pres. умру́
начина́ть	*to begin*	нача́ть pres. начну́

[1] This verb has an imperfective frequentative of its own, посыла́ть = *to send.*

The verb -ять (only used in composition with prepositions, cf. § 88) forms its compound imperfectives as follows:

Imperfective.		*Perfective.*
[-имать]		[-ять]
внима́ть	*to attend, hear*	вня́ть (pres. not used)
занима́ть	*to occupy, to borrow*	заня́ть
		pres. займу́
		займёшь
нанима́ть	*to hire*	наня́ть
		pres. найму́, &c.
N.B. понима́ть	*to understand*	поня́ть
		pres. пойму́
		поймёшь, &c.
поднима́ть	*to lift*	подня́ть
(or подыма́ть)		pres. подниму́
		подни́мешь, &c.
принима́ть	*to accept*	приня́ть
		pres. приму́
		при́мешь, &c.
снима́ть	*to take off (clothes)*	сня́ть
	to photograph	pres. сниму́
		сни́мешь
N.B. ——	*to take*	взять
cf. § 117		pres. возьму́
[взима́ть = *to levy money*]		возьмёшь
пойма́ть	*to catch*	cf. § 117

In the case of this verb, the stems of which are -им- and -ьм-, the н between the preposition and the stem is explained by the fact that certain prepositions, e.g. съ and въ, originally ended in a nasal, which was dropped after such forms as снять had become crystallized. On the analogy of these forms, the н was inserted between the preposition and the stem in other compounds of this verb.

The pasts of all these perfectives are за́нялъ, заняла́, за́няло; за́няли: по́нялъ, поняла́, по́няло; по́няли, &c., i.e. they are, as to be expected, formed from the infinitive.

§ 114. Perfective Simple Verbs.

Not all perfective verbs are compound. There is a fair number of simple verbs which are already perfective in themselves without the prefixing of any preposition.

Such verbs are

дать = *to give*
дѣть = *to put*
стать = *to take one's stand, to become, to begin.*

Besides these there are two categories of simple verbs which are perfective; the first contains verbs of various classes, most of them very common:

Imperfective.		*Perfective.*
броса́ть	*to throw*	бро́сить
конча́ть	*to finish*	ко́нчить
ложи́ться	*to lie down*	лечь
лиша́ть	*to deprive*	лиши́ть
па́дать	*to fall*	пасть
проща́ть	*to forgive*	прости́ть
——— ся	*to say good-bye*	——— ся
пуска́ть	*to let (go)*	пусти́ть
рѣша́ть	*to decide*	рѣши́ть
скака́ть	*to leap*	скочи́ть
станови́ться	*to become*	стать
ступа́ть	*to step*	ступи́ть
сади́ться	*to sit down*	сѣсть
хвата́ть	*to seize*	хвати́ть
явля́ться	*to appear*	яви́ться

Of one verb the imperfective aspect is compounded with a preposition, while the perfective aspect is a simple verb, viz.

покупа́ть	*to buy*	купи́ть

These verbs being perfective when they are simple, are none the less perfective when compounded with a preposition. Of the corresponding simple imperfective verbs, some when compounded with a preposition become perfective and require the formation of a compound imperfective, others remain imperfective.

Imperfective.		*Perfective.*
ступа́ть	*to step*	ступи́ть
поступа́ть	*to enter (an institution)* / *to behave*	посту́пить
ре́ша́ть	*to decide*	ре́ши́ть
разре́ша́ть	*to permit*	разре́ши́ть
явля́ться	*to appear*	яви́ться
объявля́ть	*to declare*	объяви́ть
	but	
броса́ть	*to throw*	бро́сить
выбра́сывать	*to throw out*	вы́бросить / выброса́ть
станови́ться	*to become*	стать
остана́вливаться	*to stop*	останови́ться
сади́ться	*to sit down*	сесть
переса́живаться	*to change trains*	пересе́сть

The other category contains a number of verbs ending in -нуть, which by means of this ending connote a single (definitive, perfective) action, e. g.

Imperfective.		*Perfective.*
гляде́ть	*to look*	гляну́ть
дви́гать	*to move* (trans.)	дви́нуть
крича́ть	*to cry out*	кри́кнуть
кида́ть	*to fling*	ки́нуть
маха́ть	*to wave*	махну́ть
плева́ть	*to spit*	плю́нуть
сова́ть	*to shove*	су́нуть
тро́гать	*to touch*	тро́нуть
шепта́ть	*to whisper*	шепну́ть

It is important not to confuse these with other simple verbs ending in -нуть which are imperfective, e. g. тяну́ть = *to pull*, which are made perfective in the ordinary way, viz. by prefixing a preposition, потяну́ть, кре́пнуть = *to grow strong*, compound perfective окре́пнуть. These verbs in -нуть being perfective are naturally also perfective when compounded with a preposition; the corresponding simple imperfective verbs are usually lengthened by the already familiar process (insertion of -ыв- or -ив-) to form the corresponding compound imperfective, e. g.

Imperfective.		*Perfective.*
глядéть	*to look*	глянýть [1]
взгля́дывать	*to look up*	взглянýть
сова́ть	*to shove*	сýнуть
высóвывать	*to shove out*	вы́сунуть
трóгать	*to touch*	трóнуть
дотрóгиваться	*to come into (physical) contact with*	дотрóнуться
крича́ть	*to cry out*	кри́кнуть
вскри́кивать	*to scream*	вскри́кнуть

Notice

кида́ть	*to fling*	ки́нуть
прики́дываться	*to pretend to be but*	прики́нуться
покида́ть	*to abandon*	поки́нуть
and		
висéть	*to hang* (intrans.)	пови́снуть

Some verbs only used in composition with prepositions cannot be formed in complete series, e. g.

Imperfective.		*Perfective.*
обма́нывать	*to deceive*	обману́ть
вздыха́ть	*to sigh*	вздохну́ть
исчеза́ть	*to disappear*	исчéзнуть
привыка́ть	*to grow accustomed to*	привы́кнуть
отвыка́ть	*to disaccustom oneself to*	отвы́кнуть

§ 115. Imperfective Compound Verbs.

Conversely not all compound verbs are perfective. We have already seen that the prefixing of a preposition does not necessarily make a verb perfective, e. g. разгова́ривать = *to converse*, убива́ть = *to kill*, покупа́ть = *to buy*, поступа́ть = *to behave*. Besides these there is a very large number of compound imperfective verbs which form a class by themselves. These correspond in meaning to a series of compound perfective verbs ending mostly

---

[1] A perfective verb поглядéть also exists.

in -ить or -ѣть and belonging to class II. The corresponding compound imperfectives are formed not by lengthening the root with additional syllables, but by altering the infinitive ending from -ить or -ѣть to -ять, thus making them verbs of class I. In the course of this alteration the phonetic changes observable in the 1st sing. of the present of verbs of class II (palatalization of the last consonant of the stem and substitution of the ending -у for -ю, e. g. ви́жу from ви́дѣть, or insertion of л, e. g. люблю́ from люби́ть) are reproduced throughout the whole of the compound imperfective owing to the influence of the palatal vowel я, which in certain cases becomes а (i. e. -ять, &c., become -ать, &c.).

Imperfective.		*Perfective.*
встрѣча́ть	*to meet*	встре́тить
вообража́ть	*to imagine*	вообрази́ть
выража́ть	*to express*	вы́разить
навѣща́ть	*to visit*	навѣсти́ть
объясня́ть	*to explain*	объясни́ть
ошиба́ться	*to be mistaken*	ошиби́ться
отвѣча́ть	*to answer*	отве́тить
перемѣня́ть	*to change*	перемѣни́ть
повторя́ть	*to repeat*	повтори́ть
получа́ть	*to receive*	получи́ть
позволя́ть	*to permit*	позво́лить
посѣща́ть	*to visit*	посѣти́ть
ударя́ть	*to strike* (trans.)	уда́рить
убѣжда́ть	*to convince*	убѣди́ть
употребля́ть	*to use*	употреби́ть
Notice вѣ́шать	*to hang* (trans.)	повѣ́сить
	and many others.	

In the case of a few verbs which are used in their simple forms it is possible to form the already familiar complete series of four, e. g.

Imperfective.		*Perfective.*
ста́вить	*to put*	поста́вить
оставля́ть	*to leave*	оста́вить

and many other very common compounds.

Compound Imperfectives formed by change of accent.

In the case of a few verbs the form of the compound imperfective differs from that of the simple imperfective (except for the addition of the preposition) only in the position of the accent, e.g.

Imperfective.		*Perfective.*
па́дать	*to fall*	[пасть][1]
пропада́ть	*to get lost*	пропа́сть
notice also the very common verbs		
попада́ть	*to hit upon, to happen on*	попа́сть
сы́пать	*to scatter*	посы́пать
pres. сы́плю, сы́плешь		pres. посы́плю, посы́плешь
засыпа́ть	*to cover by strewing*	засы́пать
pres. засыпа́ю		pres. засы́плю, засы́плешь
notice also the very common variations of this verb		
засыпа́ть	*to fall asleep*	засну́ть
просыпа́ться	*to awake*	проснну́ться
дви́гать	*to move* (trans.)	дви́нуть
pres. дви́гаю and дви́жу		
подвига́ть	*to move up to* (trans.)	подви́нуть
sometimes the r is retained in the perfective		
воздвига́ть	*to erect*	воздви́гнуть
бе́гать	*to run*	побе́гать
избе́га́ть	*to avoid*	избе́жа́ть / избе́гнуть

§ 116. Simple Imperfective Verbs with two forms.

There is a certain number of simple imperfective verbs which have two distinct forms, distinct, though cognate in meaning. They are both equally imperfective, but while one describes an action that is actually in progress, the other connotes potentiality

[1] The compound perfective упа́сть, pres. упаду́ (compound imperfective упада́ть), is more commonly used than пасть.

or habit. The former are called *actual simple imperfectives* (sometimes called *concrete*), the latter *potential simple imperfectives* (sometimes called *abstract*). A good example is the verb *to go* (sc. *on foot*); to express this there are two distinct imperfective verbs:

1. итти́ (sometimes spelt идти́)
2. ходи́ть.

The first means *actually to go* or *to be going*, the second *potentially to go* or *to be in the habit of going*. Examples:

куда́ вы идёте? = *where are you going?* (sc. now)

хо́дите-ли вы въ теа́тръ? = *do you go to the theatre?* (sc. *ever* or *often*)

я иду́ гуля́ть = *I am going for a walk*

я уже́ хожу́ = *I can now walk* (sc. *after an illness*).

The verb *to fly* is:

1. лете́ть
2. лета́ть

вотъ лети́тъ аэропла́нъ! = *there is an aeroplane flying!*

пти́цы лета́ютъ = *birds fly*

The verb *to carry* is:

1. нести́
2. носи́ть

почтальо́нъ несётъ вамъ письмо́ = *the postman is bringing you a letter*

я всегда́ ношу́ кало́ши = *I always wear galoshes.*

These verbs are the following:

	Actual.		*Potential.*
inf.	блесте́ть	*to shine*	блиста́ть
pres.	блещу́		блиста́ю
	блести́шь		блиста́ешь
inf.	бѣжа́ть	*to run*	бѣга́ть
pres.	бѣгу́		бѣга́ю
	бѣжи́шь		бѣга́ешь
inf.	везти́	*to convey*	вози́ть
pres.	везу́		вожу́
	везёшь		во́зишь

	Actual.		*Potential.*
inf.	вести́	*to lead*	води́ть
pres.	веду́		вожу́
	ведёшь		во́дишь
	гнать	*to drive, chase*	гоня́ть
	гоню́		гоня́ю
	го́нишь		&c.
	идти́	*to go (on foot)*	ходи́ть
	иду́		хожу́
	идёшь		хо́дишь
	лете́ть	*to fly*	лета́ть
	лечу́		лета́ю
	лети́шь		&c.
	ломи́ть	*to break*	лома́ть
	ломлю́		лома́ю
	ло́мишь		&c.
	ле́зть	*to climb, clamber*	ла́зить
	ле́зу		ла́жу
	ле́зешь		ла́зишь
	нести́	*to carry, bear*	носи́ть (*to wear*)
	несу́		ношу́
	несёшь		но́сишь
	плыть	*to float, swim*	пла́вать (*to swim*)
	плыву́		пла́ваю
	плывёшь		&c.
	ползти́	*to crawl*	по́лзать
	ползу́		по́лзаю
	ползёшь		&c.
	сади́ть	*to set, plant*	сажа́ть
	сажу́		сажа́ю
	са́дишь		&c.
	е́хать	*to go (in any way*	е́здить
	е́ду	*except on foot*, e.g.	е́зжу
	е́дешь	*by train or on horseback)*	е́здишь

Two verbs belonging to this category are defective, viz.

Actual.		*Potential.*
ви́дѣть	*to see*	видáть
ви́жу		
ви́дишь (sometimes contracted to вишь)		
слы́шать	*to hear*	слыхáть
слы́шу		
слы́шишь		

The presents of the potential imperfectives of these verbs are not used; the infinitives and the pasts are, on the other hand, quite common, especially in negations and interrogations, e.g.

его́ не видáть = *he is not to be seen* (sc. *I can't see him*)

слыхáли-ли вы э́того пѣвцá? = *have you ever heard this singer?*

When these verbs are compounded with prepositions it is usually the *actual imperfective* which forms the *compound perfective* with loss of meaning by the preposition, though such are also sometimes formed by the *potential imperfective*. It is also the *actual imperfective* which forms the *compound perfective* with retention of meaning by the preposition. On the other hand, it is the *potential imperfective* which forms the *compound imperfective* with retention of meaning by the preposition:

Imperfective.		*Perfective.*
летѣть (actual)	*to fly*	полетѣть
летáть (potential)		
перелетáть	*to fly over*	перелетѣть
вести́	*to lead*	повести́
води́ть		
проводи́ть	*to lead through* / *to spend (time)*	провести́
везти́	*to convey*	повезти́
вози́ть		
привози́ть	*to bring (in a conveyance)*	привезти́

Imperfective.		*Perfective.*
нести́	*to carry*	понести́
носи́ть	*to wear*	поноси́ть [1]
приноси́ть	*to bring (by hand)*	принести́
идти́	*to go (on foot)*	пойти́
ходи́ть		сходи́ть [2]
приходи́ть	*to come (on foot)*	прійти́ (or придти́)
находи́ть	*to find*	найти́
проходи́ть	*to pass*	пройти́

Needless to say, both forms of all these verbs have many other compounds besides those given here.

The two verbs ви́дѣть and слы́шать have the following perfectives:

Imperfective.		*Perfective.*
ви́дѣть	*to see*	уви́дѣть
вида́ть		увида́ть
слы́шать	*to hear*	услы́шать
слыха́ть		услыха́ть

The presents of уви́дѣть and услы́шать are very common, being the ordinary (perfective) futures of ви́дѣть and слы́шать, e.g.

я уви́жу его за́втра = *I shall see him to-morrow.*

The presents of увида́ть and услыха́ть are never used. Their pasts on the other hand are quite common, and it is to be noticed that there is no essential difference in meaning between

увида́лъ and уви́дѣлъ

---

[1] This verb is seldom used, the perfective future of нести́ (without idea of any particular direction) is понести́; from носи́ть (which usually, but not always, means *to wear*) the imperfective future is naturally бу́ду носи́ть, while *I shall wear* (= *I shall put on*) is надѣ́ну from надѣ́ть.

[2] сходи́ть has a special meaning, viz. *to go, with the implication of speedy return*, e.g.

я схожу́ на по́чту = *I shall just run round to the post (and shall be back soon).*

There is also an imperfective verb сходи́ть (perfective сойти́) = *to come* or *go off*, e.g.

онъ схо́дитъ съ ума́ = *he is going off his head*
сходи́ться, сойти́сь = *to foregather.*

or between

услыха́ть and услы́шать.

Notice the compounds:

Imperfective.		*Perfective.*
зави́довать	*to envy*	позави́довать
ненави́дѣть	*to hate*	возненави́дѣть
предви́дѣть	*to foresee*	(only imperfective).

Two verbs deserve special mention, viz. бѣжа́ть and ѣ́хать; these form their compound perfectives from the actual imperfective, but the corresponding compound imperfective is formed not from the potential imperfective but from yet a third imperfective form of the word, only used in composition:

Imperfective.		*Perfective.*
бѣжа́ть	*to run*	побѣжа́ть
бѣ́гать		побѣ́гать
перебѣга́ть	*to run across*	перебѣжа́ть
избѣга́ть	*to avoid*	избѣ́жать and избѣ́гнуть
убѣга́ть	*to run away*	убѣжа́ть
прибѣга́ть	*to run to* / *to have recourse to*	прибѣжа́ть / прибѣ́гнуть
ѣ́хать [1]	*to go (except on foot)*	пое́хать
ѣ́здить		съѣ́здить [2]
пріѣзжа́ть	*to arrive*	пріѣ́хать
уѣзжа́ть	*to depart*	уѣ́хать

плыть and лѣзть have the same peculiarity, forming their compound imperfectives not with the verbs пла́вать and ла́зить but with -плыва́ть and -лѣза́ть; they are not given in full here, because they are of much less common occurrence.

---

[1] ѣ́хать and ѣ́здить form parallels to идти and ходи́ть, e.g.

я ѣ́ду въ Ло́ндонъ = *I am travelling to London*

я ка́ждый годъ ѣ́зжу въ Россію = *I travel to Russia every year.*

[2] съѣ́здить forms a parallel to сходи́ть and means *to take a journey and come back soon*, e.g.

вчера́ мы съѣ́здили къ знако́мымъ = *yesterday we drove to see some acquaintances* (sc. *we didn't stay long* or *we came home again the same day*).

It has already been mentioned that the *potential imperfectives* are not often used to form the *compound perfectives*, but usually to form the *compound imperfectives*, e. g. перелета́ть, проводи́ть, &c. But we have seen that they can be so used, e. g. сходи́ть, съе́здить. Besides these there are, however, numerous instances of the use of the *potential imperfectives* to form a *compound perfective*; in such cases the corresponding compound imperfective is formed not from the actual imperfective but by the already familiar process of the insertion of -ыв- or -ив-, or by some other alternative form. It is to be noticed that several potential imperfectives which are in themselves intransitive become transitive when they enter this category of compound perfectives. For the sake of lucidity the verbs are repeated in full:

Imperfective.		*Perfective.*
нёсти́	*to carry*	понести́
носи́ть	*to wear*	поноси́ть
приноси́ть	*to bring (by hand)*	принести́
изна́шивать	*to wear out (materials, clothes)*	износи́ть
notice also		
выноси́ть	*to carry out, to endure*	вы́нести
вына́шивать	*to wear out (clothes)*	вы́носить
вести́	*to lead*	повести́
води́ть		
проводи́ть	*to spend (time)*	провести́
провожа́ть	*to accompany (walking)* / *to see off (at station)*	проводи́ть
идти́	*to go (on foot)*	пойти́
ходи́ть		сходи́ть
уходи́ть	*to go away*	уйти́
уха́живать [1]		уходи́ть [2]
е́хать	*to go (except on foot)*	пое́хать
е́здить		съе́здить
разъе́зжа́ться	*to depart in different directions* / *to miss one another on the road*	разъе́хаться
разъе́зживать	*to wear out (the road with traffic)*	разъе́здить

[1] = *to flirt with* or *to nurse*; construction: за + instrumental.
[2] = *to waste (money), to wear out (a horse).*

and somewhat anomalously

Imperfective.		*Perfective.*
изъ̀ѣзжа́ть	*to travel over all parts of, visit exhaustively*	изъ̀ѣздить

Notice the causative verbs:

расти́	*to grow* (intrans.)	вы́расти
выраща́ть	*to make grow*	вы́растить

and пои́ть = *to water* (*animals*)
from пить = *to drink.*

§ 117. Anomalous Verbs.

A few simple imperfective verbs have as compound perfectives corresponding to them in meaning verbs from other stems; these are:

Imperfective.		*Perfective.*
брать	*to take*	взять
pres. беру́		pres. возьму́
берёшь		возьмёшь
бить	*to hit*	уда́рить
pres. бью		pres. уда́рю
бьёшь		уда́ришь
класть	*to put*	положи́ть
pres. кладу́		pres. положу́
кладёшь		поло́жишь
лови́ть	*to catch*	пойма́ть
pres. ловлю́		pres. пойма́ю
ло́вишь		пойма́ешь
говори́ть	*to say, tell*	сказа́ть
pres. говорю́		pres. скажу́
говори́шь		ска́жешь

Several of these verbs have compound perfectives or imperfectives formed from the same stem as well as those given here, but it has so happened that e. g. the verb сказа́ть has come to be the regular perfective corresponding in meaning to говори́ть; there is a perfective verb поговори́ть, but it means *to have a little talk*, while

сказа́ть and говори́ть both mean *to say* or *tell* (говори́ть can also mean *to talk*). It is thus possible to form fuller though incomplete series of these verbs, e. g.

Imperfective.		*Perfective.*	
брать	= *to take*		
собира́ть	= *to collect*	собра́ть	= *to collect*
взима́ть	= *to levy money*	взять	= *to take*
бить	= *to hit*	поби́ть	= *to hit a little*
убива́ть	= *to kill*	уби́ть	= *to kill*
ударя́ть	= *to hit*	уда́рить	= *to hit*
класть	= *to put*		
укла́дывать	= *to pack* (trans.)	уложи́ть	= *to pack* (trans.)
——ся	= „ (intrans.)	——ся	= „ (intrans.)
полага́ть	= *to suppose*	положи́ть	= *to put* / *to suppose*

Notice the idioms:

полага́ется? = *is it included* (*in the price*)?
поло́жимъ = *let us suppose*

лови́ть	= *to catch*		
нала́вливать	= *to catch a lot*	налови́ть	= *to catch a lot*
		пойма́ть	= *to catch*

Cf. the cognate verb

понима́ть	= *to understand*	поня́ть	= *to understand*

говори́ть	= *to say, tell, talk*	поговори́ть	= *to talk a little*
разгова́ривать	= *to converse*		
угова́ривать	= *to try to persuade*	уговори́ть	= *to persuade*
отгова́ривать	= *to try to dissuade*	отговори́ть	= *to dissuade*
отка́зывать(ся)	= *to refuse*	отказа́ть(ся)	= *to refuse*
ука́зывать	= *to point out*	указа́ть	= *to point out*
ока́зываться	= *to turn out to be*	оказа́ться	= *to turn out to be*
прика́зывать	= *to order*	приказа́ть	= *to order*
зака́зывать	= „	заказа́ть	= *to* „ *, register*
нака́зывать	= *to punish*	наказа́ть	= *to punish*
дока́зывать	= *to prove*	доказа́ть	= *to prove*
пока́зывать	= *to show*	показа́ть	= *to show*
расска́зывать	= *to relate*	рассказа́ть	= *to relate*
ска́зывать	= „	сказа́ть	= *to tell, say*

Imperfective.	*Perfective.*
[Cf. ка́жется = *it seems*, sc. *I think*	
каза́лось = *it seemed*	показа́лось = *it seemed*]

Certain verbs are only perfective, e.g.

очути́ться = *to find oneself suddenly anywhere*
очну́ться = *to wake up anywhere*
состоя́ться = *to take place.*

Others are only imperfective, e.g.

зави́сѣть = *to depend*
значи́ть = *to mean*
недоумѣва́ть = *to be perplexed, to hesitate*
нужда́ться = *to need*
повинова́ться = *to submit to*
подлежа́ть = *to be open to* (e.g. *doubt*)
подража́ть = *to imitate*
покрови́тельствовать = *to protect*
предстоя́ть = *to be imminent*
предчу́вствовать = *to have a presentiment of*
преслѣ́довать = *to persecute*
принадлежа́ть = *to belong*
содержа́ть = *to contain, maintain*
содѣ́йствовать = *to help, contribute to* (*morally*)
сожалѣ́ть = *to regret*
состоя́ть = *to consist*
сочу́вствовать = *to sympathize*
сто́ить = *to cost*

Others can be used as imperfectives or perfectives, having only the one form, e.g.

велѣ́ть = *to order, command*
жени́ться = *to marry* (*of the man only*)
ра́нить = *to wound.*

Some verbs, apparently perfective, are derived from compound nouns, e.g.

Imperfective.		*Perfective.*
разумѣ́ется (ра́зумъ)	*it is understood*	
забо́титься (забо́та)	*to trouble about anything*	позабо́титься
наслѣ́довать (наслѣ́дникъ)	*to inherit*	унаслѣ́довать

PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION WITH VERBS, NOUNS, ETC.

§ 118. The following is not intended to be a complete list of all the various meanings acquired or lent by prepositions in composition; such a list to be exhaustive would require a whole book to itself.

Here only some of the most important varieties of meaning are given as a help to the beginner, who is often puzzled by the apparently numberless compound words. It is important to remember that most of the prepositions can be used merely to make a perfective out of an imperfective verb. Also that in many cases besides this the original meaning of the preposition is barely apparent. In beginning to read Russian it is always helpful to cut off the preposition or prepositions of any unfamiliar compound word, when the root (and the meaning) will often become clear.

There are four prepositions which are only used in composition, viz. воз-, вы-, пере- (пре-), and раз-.

воз- (вз-)

The meaning is originally *up*, e.g.

воздвига́ть ipfv. = *to erect*

but this often lapses, e.g.

возража́ть ipfv. = *to reply*
возрази́ть pfv. = „

sometimes it merely forms the perfective:

возненави́дѣть pfv. = *to conceive hatred for*
возмо́жно = *it is possible.*

When the word with which it is compounded begins with a vowel it sometimes, though by no means always, contracts to вз-, e.g.

взойти́ pfv. = *to rise* (*of the sun*, &c.)
взять pfv. = *to take*

but pres. возьму́ = *I shall take*

взмо́рье = *deep water* (at sea, as opposed to the shallow water of an estuary).

If the word with which it is compounded begins with к, х, п, т, it becomes вос-, e.g.

восхо́дъ со́лнца = *sunrise*
восто́къ = *the East*
Воскресе́ніе = *Sunday* (*Resurrection*)
воспреща́ть ipfv. / воспрети́ть pfv. } = *to forbid*

it sometimes appears as вс- before words beginning with these same consonants:

всходи́ть ipfv. = *to rise*
вскрича́ть pfv. = *to scream.*

Care must be taken not to mistake воз- for въ in composition with words beginning with з, с.

ВЫ-

usually = *out*, e.g.

выходи́ть ipfv. = *to go out* (*on foot*)
вы́йти pfv. = „ „
вы́ходъ = *exit*
вы́ставка = *exhibition*

it sometimes means *thoroughly*

высѣка́ть / вы́сѣчь } = *to thrash thoroughly*
вы́здоровѣть pfv. = *to get thoroughly well*

sometimes merely to form the perfective

вы́пить pfv. = *to drink* (sc. *to drink to the end*)

in composition with нести́ and носи́ть cf. § 116.

A peculiarity of this preposition in composition with verbs is that when it makes the verb compounded with it perfective it attracts and holds the accent throughout, while if the compound verb is imperfective the accent remains on the stem of the verb, e. g.

выража́ть ipfv. / вы́разить pfv. } = *to express*

Imperfective.		*Perfective.*
вы́ѣзжать	*to drive out*	вы́ѣхать
вы́ѣзживать	*to break in horses*	вы́ѣздить

Cf. also in composition with нести́ and носи́ть § 116.

In composition with nouns and adjectives the accent is always on вы-, e. g.

вы́говоръ = *pronunciation, lecture* (sc. *scolding*)
вы́возъ = *export.*

пере-

generally = *over, across, afresh*

переходи́ть ipfv. } = *to cross on foot*
перейти́ pfv. }

переѣзжа́ть ipfv. } = *to cross* (*by boat or rail*)
переѣ́хать pfv. } *to move* (*into a new house*)

перемѣ́на = *change* (e. g. *in the weather*)
переписка = *correspondence*
перево́зъ = *ferry*

перево́дъ = *translation*
перева́лъ = *watershed*

It can imply excess:

пересоли́ть = *to over-salt.*

Another form of this preposition is

пре-

which is also used to express the ideas *round, over*, or *across.*

претвори́ть ipfv. } = *to transform, convert*
претвори́ть pfv. }

предава́ть ipfv. } = *to hand over to, to betray*
преда́ть pfv. }

пре́данный = *devoted*
преступле́ніе = *transgression, crime*
препя́тствіе = *obstacle*
предѣ́лъ = *boundary, region*
превыша́ть ipfv. = *to surpass* (trans.)
презира́ть ipfv. = *to despise*
прерыва́ть ipfv. } = *to interrupt*
прерва́ть pfv. }
преиму́щество = *advantage*

Notice непремѣ́нно = *without fail.*

In composition with other prepositions :

превосходи́ть ipfv.
превзойти́ pfv. } = *to excel*
превосходи́тельство = *Excellency*
превосхо́дно ! = *excellent !*
преподава́ть ipfv.
препода́ть pfv. } = *to teach, lecture on.*

In composition with adjectives it lends superlative meaning, e. g.

прекра́сный = *very beautiful, splendid*

(the original meaning of кра́сный was *bright*) cf. § 59.

раз-

usually = *asunder, dis-, di-*

разво́дъ = *divorce*
размѣня́ть pfv. = *to change* (money)
размѣ́ръ = *dimension*
раздѣля́ть ipfv.
раздѣли́ть pfv. } = *to divide, distribute*
разбива́ть ipfv.
разби́ть pfv. } = *to break* (e. g. *glass* or *china*).

It can also as it were *amplify* any activity, e. g.

разгова́ривать ipfv. = *to converse*
разгово́ръ = *conversation*
разска́зывать ipfv.
разсказа́ть pfv. } = *to narrate*
разска́зъ = *a tale*
развра́тъ = *depravity*
разводи́ть ipfv. = *to breed.*

It often corresponds to our *un-*:

раздѣва́ться ipfv.
раздѣ́ться pfv. } = *to undress oneself*
разви́тіе = *development* (lit. *unwinding*)
разва́лины = *ruins*
разстра́ивать ipfv.
разстро́ить pfv. } = *to unsettle, upset* (*morally*).

It sometimes means *quite*, e.g.

я не разслы́шалъ = *I didn't quite hear.*

Notice the following:

умъ = *mind*
ра́зумъ = *intellect*
у́мный = *clever*
разу́мный = *sensible* (*with common sense*)
разсчётъ = *calculation*
разсѣ́янный = *absent-minded.*

The ъ is retained before palatal vowels, e.g.

разъѣ́хаться pfv. = *to break up* (*of a party*).

When и follows it becomes ы, e.g.

разыска́ть from разъ + иска́ть.

Before к, х, п, т, ц, ч, ш, щ раз- becomes рас-

расхо́ды = *expenses.*

Occasionally, usually when the accent falls on it, раз- becomes роз-, e.g.

ро́злилъ, ро́злила = *to pour out* (*tea*), *to spill*

alternative past of разли́ть pfv., the other being разли́лъ, &c.

росписа́ніе поѣзда́въ = *time-table of trains* (*on the wall*).

In composition with other prepositions:

распрода́жа = *sale* (*in shops*)
расположе́ніе = *disposition, temperament*
распоряже́ніе = *disposition* (*control*), *arrangement*
распростране́ніе = *propagation.*

The other prepositions used in composition are:

безъ

= (*without*), *dis-*, *un-* (this never changes to бес-)

безпоко́ить ipfv.
обезпоко́ить pfv. } = *to disturb*

безусло́вно = *unconditionally, absolutely*

безкоры́стный = *disinterested*
безпокойный = *anxious*
безобра́зный = *horrible, disgraceful* (lit. *having no pattern*, sc. *unlike anything*).

When и follows it becomes ы:

безымённый = *nameless*
(безъ + и́мя).

въ (во)
= *in, into*

входи́ть (въ) ipfv.
войти́ (въ) pfv. } = *to enter*
входъ = *entrance*

вводи́ть ipfv.
ввести́ pfv. } = *to introduce* (e. g. *a custom*)

влюби́ться (въ) pfv. = *to fall in love with*

включи́тельно = *inclusively.*

Notice

встава́ть ipfv.
встать pfv. } = *to get up* (*from bed*)
внима́ніе = *attention.*

The ъ is retained before vowels, e. g.

въе́хать pfv. = *to ride* or *drive into.*

до
= *up to, to the end, pre-*

доходи́ть (до) ipfv.
дойти́ (до) pfv. } = *to reach* (*on foot*)
дое́хать (до) pfv. = *to reach* (*except on foot*)
дохо́дъ = *income*
догово́ръ = *treaty*
доказа́тельство = *proof*
допото́пный = *antediluvian*
докла́дъ = *lecture* (*on anything*)
доста́ть = *to obtain.*

за
= *behind*

захо́дъ со́лнца = *sunset*
зака́ть „ „

It has many uses not obviously though indirectly connected with this meaning:

заходи́ть къ ipfv.
зайти́ къ pfv. } = *to call on, look in on*

заде́ржка = *delay*

заложи́ть = *to mortgage*

закла́дъ = *pledge, wager*

зака́зъ = *order* (*for anything*, e. g. *goods*)

заказно́е письмо́ = *registered letter*

заплати́ть pfv. = *to pay*
(плати́ть ipfv.)

заставля́ть ipfv.
заста́вить pfv. } = *to compel*

заставáть ipfv.
заста́ть pfv. } = *to find* (*any one*, e. g. *at home*)

за often gives the meaning: *to start doing anything*, e.g.

засмѣя́ться = *to break into laughter*

which is the perfective of

смѣя́ться = *to laugh*
запѣть pfv. = *to burst into song*
заговори́ть pfv. = *to start talking.*

With a reflexive verb it can mean *to forget oneself, be lost in doing anything*:

зачита́ться pfv. = *to read till you lose sense of time and place.*

изъ (изо)

= *out*

издава́ть ipfv.
изда́ть pfv. } = *to edit, publish*

изда́ніе = *edition, publication*

изложе́ніе = *exposition.*

The ъ is retained before vowels, e.g.

изъясне́ніе = *explanation.*

When и follows it becomes ы, e.g.

изы́сканный = *exquisite, far-fetched.*

Before к, х, п, т, ч, ц it becomes ис- :

исхо́дъ = *issue* (*out of a difficulty*)

исполня́ть ipfv.
испо́лнить pfv. } = *to fulfil*

исключе́ніе = *exception*

исключи́тельно = *exclusively.*

между

= *inter-* (but never with verbs)

междунаро́дный = *international.*

на

= *on to*

находи́ть ipfv.
найти́ pfv. } = *to find* (*to come upon*)

наде́жда = *hope* (*something put on*)

наде́яться = *to hope.*

Notice

насле́дникъ = *heir*

на́сморкъ = *cold* (*in the head*)

нау́ка = *science*

наро́дъ = *people, nation*

нало́женнымъ платежёмъ = *pay on delivery*

настоя́щій = *present, actual, real*

наступа́ющій = *coming, imminent*

намѣ́реніе = *intention.*

Often with the meaning of *to do anything to the full*, or *largely*

наѣ́сться pfv. = *to eat one's fill*

накупи́ть pfv. = *to buy a quantity of*

наслажда́ться ipfv. = *to enjoy oneself*

начи́танный = *well-read.*

Preceded by a negative it expresses the idea *not to be able to have enough of*

ненагля́дный = *that one cannot feast one's eyes on long enough*

ненасы́тный = *insatiable.*

надъ
= *over*

на́дпись = *inscription*
принадлежа́ть ipfv. = *to belong.*

о (об- обо)
= *about*

обходи́ть ipfv.
обойти́ pfv. } = *to go round*

необходи́мый = *essential*

обду́мывать ipfv.
обду́мать pfv. } = *to think over*

оши́бка = *mistake* (= *missing the mark*).

This meaning is often not apparent:

обижа́ть ipfv.
оби́дѣть pfv. } = *to offend* (lit. *look round*)

опеча́тка = *misprint*
огово́рка = *reserve, limitation*
обѣ́дъ = *dinner*
огоро́дъ = *kitchen-garden.*

The ъ is retained before a palatal vowel, e. g.

объясне́ніе = *explanation.*

When и follows it becomes ы, e. g.

о́быскъ = *inquiry, search.*

отъ (ото)
= *away from*

отходи́ть (отъ) ipfv.
отойти́ (отъ) pfv. } = *to go away from*

о́ттепель = *a thaw*
отли́чно! = *excellent!*
отрѣ́зать = *to cut off*

sometimes ото- as in отосла́ть = *to send away.*

The ъ is retained before vowels, e. g.

отъѣ́здъ = *departure.*

When и follows it becomes ы, e. g.

отыска́ть = *to find by dint of searching.*

по

The commonest use is to make imperfective verbs perfective; in doing so it usually connotes that the action will be of less duration or of less importance than that expressed by the simple imperfective verb, e. g.

поговори́ть = *to talk a little*
потанцова́ть = *to dance a little*
посмѣ́яться = *to laugh a little.*

But in a large number of cases it has lost all trace of its original meaning, e. g.

посыла́ть ipfv.
посла́ть pfv. } = *to send*

получа́ть ipfv.
получи́ть pfv. } = *to receive*

посѣща́ть ipfv.
посѣти́ть pfv. } = *to visit.*

Notice the following very common words, all compounded with по:

похо́дъ	= *campaign*
похо́жъ (на)	= *like* (adj.)
по́хороны	= *funeral*
посте́ль	= *bed* (specifically *bedding*)
посту́покъ	= *act, behaviour*
посу́да	= *crockery*
поте́ря	= *loss*
подержанный	= *second-hand*
по́слѣ	= *after*
послѣ́дній	= *last*
послѣ́дствіе	= *consequence*
послѣ́довать (за) pfv.	= *to follow after*

and hundreds of others.

Cf. слѣ́дующій = *next*
вслѣ́дствіе + acc. = *as a result of*
слѣ́довать (за) ipfv. = *to follow after*
слѣди́ть (за) ipfv. = *to follow.*

подъ (подо-)

= *under*

подходи́ть (къ) ipfv.
подойти́ (къ) pfv. } = *to approach*

поднима́ть
or подыма́ть } ipfv.
подня́ть pfv. } = *to lift*

подде́льный = *counterfeit*
подходя́щій = *suitable*
подде́ржка = *support*
поджига́тельство = *incendiarism*
подозрѣва́ть ipfv. = *to suspect*
подозри́тельный = *suspicious.*

The ъ is retained before vowels, e. g.

подъѣ́здъ = *porch, entrance.*

When и follows it becomes ы, e. g.

подыска́ть = *to match* (e. g. *colours*), *assort.*

(передъ)

пред-

= *fore* (*fore-*), *pre-*

предска́зывать ipfv.
предсказа́ть pfv. } = *to foretell*

предвари́тельный = *preliminary*

предпочита́ть ipfv.
предпоче́сть pfv. } = *to prefer*

предложе́ніе = *offer, suggestion.*

Notice:

предпринима́ть ipfv.
предприня́ть pfv. } = *to undertake*
предпрія́тіе = *undertaking.*

The ъ is retained before vowels, e. g.

предъявле́ніе = *presentation* (*of a claim*).

When и follows it may be written ы, e. g.

предыду́щій = *preceding.*

при

in composition often expresses the idea of *motion towards* or of the *application of one thing to another*:

приходи́ть ipfv.
прійти́ pfv. } = *to come (on foot)*

прі́ѣзжа́ть ipfv.
прі́ѣхать pfv. } = *to arrive*

принима́ть ipfv.
приня́ть pfv. } = { *to accept (invitations), to receive (guests), to take (medicines)*

приме́ръ = *example*
напримѣ́ръ = *for example* (abbr. напр.)

причи́на = *reason.*

про

= *through, past*

проходи́ть ipfv.
пройти́ pfv. } = *to pass, go through.*

Notice:

пропускна́я бума́га = *blotting-paper*
просту́да = *cold (on the chest)*

напрока́ть = *on hire*

продава́ть ipfv.
прода́ть pfv. } = *to sell*

проигра́ть = *to lose (a game), to lose money at play.*

(противъ)
противо-

= *anti-*

противодѣ́йствовать = *to counteract*
противорѣ́чіе = *contradiction, inconsistency.*

съ (со)
= (1) *with* (2) *from*

(1) сравне́ніе = *comparison*
схо́дство = *resemblance*
состоя́ть (изъ, въ) ipfv. = *to consist (of)*

соглаша́ться (съ) ipfv.
согласи́ться (съ) pfv. } = *to agree (with)*

(2) снима́ть ipfv.
снять pfv. } = { *to take off (clothes) to take (photographs)*
ссы́лка = *exile.*

Sometimes the meaning is not apparent:

счита́ть ipfv.
счесть pfv. } = *to count, consider*
счёть = *bill, account*
насчёть = *to the account of, as regards, on account of*
собо́ръ = *cathedral*
сомнѣва́ться ipfv. = *to doubt*
съѣсть pfv. = *to eat.*

The ъ is retained before vowels, e. g.

съѣздъ = *meeting, assembly.*

When и follows it becomes ы, e. g.

сы́щикъ = *spy.*

у
= *away*

уходи́ть ipfv.
уйти́ pfv. } = *to go away (on foot)*

уѣзжа́ть ipfv.
уѣхать pfv. } = *to depart* (e. g. *by rail*)

убира́ть ipfv.
убра́ть pfv. } = *to clear away*

But this primary meaning is often lost:

уставáть ipfv.
устáть pfv. } = *to grow tired*

ухóдъ = *looking after, care for*

уѣ́здъ = *district*

убóрная (sc. кóмната) = *lavatory*

укáзывать (на) ipfv.
указáть (на) pfv. } = *to point to*

укáзъ = *decree*

унижéніе = *humiliation*

умирáть ipfv.
умерéть pfv. } = *to die*

удóбно = *convenient, comfortable*

угóдно = *agreeable*

какъ вамъ угóдно = *just as you like.*

WITHDRAWN
FROM STOCK
QMUL LIBRARY

Oxford: Horace Hart M.A. Printer to the University

Library, Westfield College (University of London)
Kidderpore Avenue London NW3

Date for return

2 DEC 1971

13 JUN 1975

6 OCT 1975

29 FEB 1980

19 JAN 1982

16 FEB 1989